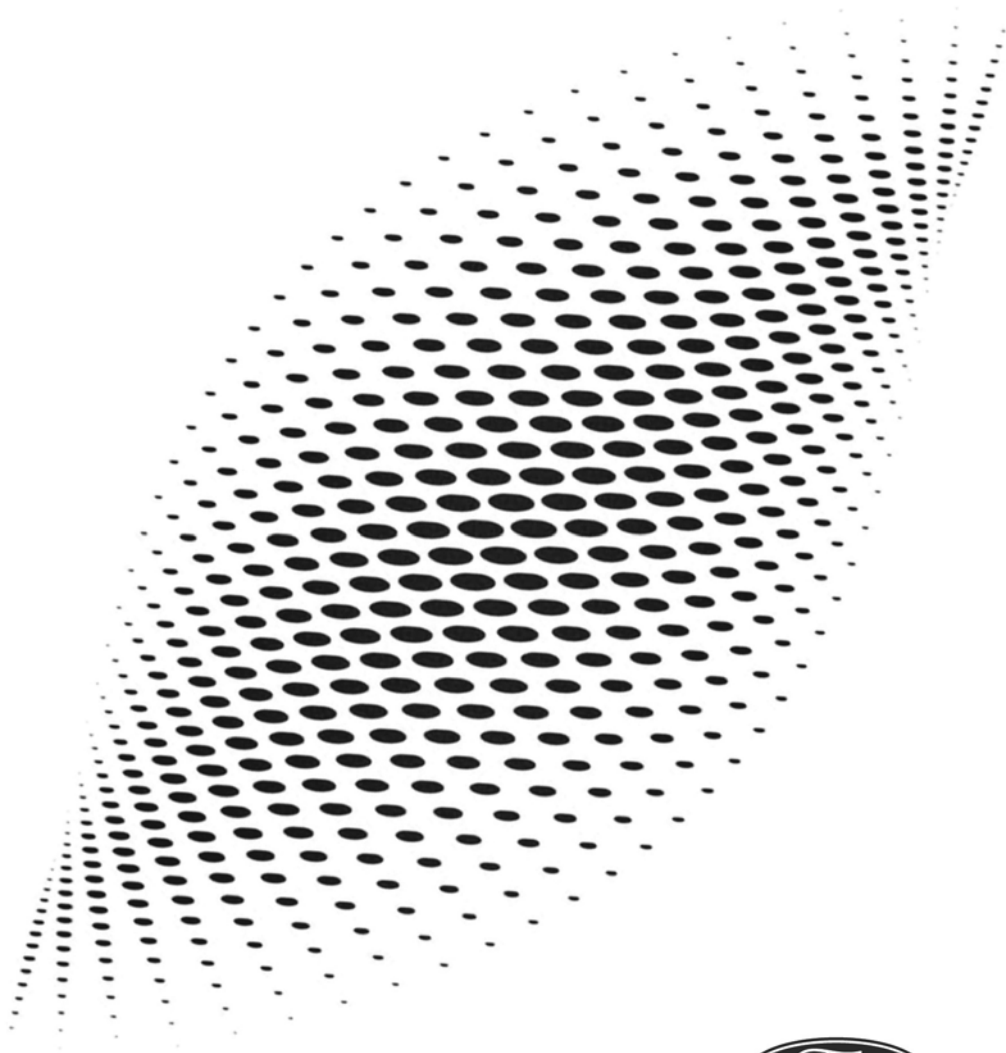


FORD **MUSTANG MACH-E** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2025

All rights reserved.

Part Number: -202511-20251119155605

Table of Contents

Contacting Us

Contacting Us	13
---------------------	----

Introduction

About This Publication	15
Using This Publication	17

Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster	18
---	----

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	21
Service Data	22
Event Data	22
Settings Data	23
Connected Vehicle Data	23
Mobile Device Data	24
Emergency Call System Data	24

Environment

Protecting the Environment	25
----------------------------------	----

Visual Search

Interior Overview	26
Exterior Overview	27

Child Safety

Child Restraints	28
Selecting a Child Restraint System	29
Installing Child Restraints	29
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations	30
Protecting Larger Children	32
Checking Seatbelt Fit	32
Child Safety Locks	33

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	34
----------------------------	----

Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	35
Sensitive Locking Mode	36
Automatic Locking Mode	36
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	37
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height	37
Seatbelt Reminder	38
Checking the Seatbelts	39

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	41
How Do the Side Airbags Work	41
How Do the Knee Airbags Work	42
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	42
Airbag Precautions	42
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator	43

Pedestrian Protection

What Is Pedestrian Protection	45
How Does Pedestrian Protection Work	45
Pedestrian Protection Precautions	45
Pedestrian Protection Indicators	46

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System	47
---	----

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	48
Using the Remote Control	48
Locating Your Vehicle	48
Changing the Remote Control Battery	49
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	50
Programming the Remote Control	51
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings	51

Table of Contents

Using the Valet Mode	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	51

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	52
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	52
Autounlock	53
Mislock	53
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	53
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	53

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	56
Keyless Entry Limitations	56
Keyless Entry Settings	56
Using Keyless Entry	56
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	57

Keyless Entry Keypad

What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad	58
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations	58
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad	58
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code	58
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes	59
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad	59
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting	60

Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work	61
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off	61

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Opening the Liftgate	62
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height	63
Closing the Liftgate	64
Stopping the Liftgate Movement	66
Liftgate Obstacle Detection	66
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	66

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	68
Opening the Liftgate	68
Closing the Liftgate	69

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	71
Security – Troubleshooting	72

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	73
Locking the Steering Wheel	73
Horn	73
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off	73

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	75
Autowipers	75
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off	76
Reverse Wipe	76
Checking the Wiper Blades	77
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	77
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	77
Washers	78

Table of Contents

Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	79
--	----

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control	80
Headlamps	80
Autolamps	81
Exterior Lamps	81
Automatic High Beam Control	82
Glare Free Lighting	85
Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions	87

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	88
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	88
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off	88
Interior Lamp Function	88
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	89
Ambient Lighting - Vehicles With: Ambient Lighting	89
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting	89

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows	90
Global Opening and Closing	90
Window Bounce-Back	91
Locking the Rear Window Controls	92

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions	93
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	93

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	94
Folding the Exterior Mirrors	94
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror	95

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview	96
Power Gauge	97
Speedometer	97
Vehicle Range Display	97
High Voltage Battery Gauge	98

Instrument Cluster Display

Brake Coach	99
-------------------	----

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer	100
Resetting the Trip Computer	100
Trip Data	100

Climate Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit	101
Switching Climate Control On and Off	101
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	101
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	101
Switching Defrost On and Off	101
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	101
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	102
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off	102
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	102
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	102
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	103
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	103
Setting the Temperature	103
Directing the Flow of Air	103
Auto Mode	103
Climate Control – Warning Lamps	104

Table of Contents

Air Conditioning System Refrigerant	104
---	-----

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	105
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	105

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	106
Sitting in the Correct Position	106
Power Seats	107
Heated Seats	109

Rear Seats

Manual Seats	110
--------------------	-----

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	113
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	113
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	113
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	113
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	114
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	114
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	115

Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function	116
Memory Function Precautions	116
Locating the Memory Function Buttons	116
Saving a Preset Position	116
Recalling a Preset Position	116

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	117
Playing Media Using the USB Port	117
Charging a Device	118

Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	120
Power Outlet Precautions	120
Locating the Power Outlets	120

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	121
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	121
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	121
Charging a Wireless Device	121

Storage

Cup Holders	123
Glove Compartment	123
Glasses Holder	123

Starting and Powering Off

Starting and Powering Off Precautions	124
Starting the Vehicle	124
Powering Off	124
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off	124
Vehicle Power Down Timer	125
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	125
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting	126

High Voltage Battery

What Is the High Voltage Battery	127
High Voltage Battery Precautions	127

Table of Contents

Preserving Your High Voltage Battery	127
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery	128
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting	128

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions	130
Locating the Charge Port	130
Charge Port Indicators	130
AC Charging	131
DC Charging	135
Charge Coupler Manual Release	137
Charging Settings	138
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	142
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	143

Electric Motor

Selector Positions	144
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)	145
Electric Motor Audible Warnings	146
Roll-Away Protection	146

All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work	148
All-Wheel Drive Precautions	148
All-Wheel Drive Limitations	148
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting	148

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control	149
Selecting a Drive Mode	149
Drive Modes	149
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	150

One Pedal Drive

What is One Pedal Drive	152
One Pedal Drive Precautions	152
One Pedal Drive Limitations	152
Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off	152
One Pedal Drive Indicators	152

Brakes

Brake Precautions	153
Anti-Lock Braking System	153
Brake Over Accelerator	153
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir	153
Checking the Brake Fluid	153
Brake Fluid Specification	154
Brakes – Troubleshooting	155

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	156
Applying the Electric Parking Brake	156
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	156
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	156
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	156
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	157
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	157
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	157

Reverse Brake Assist

How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	159
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	159
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	160
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	160
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	160

Table of Contents

Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	161
--	-----

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	163
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	163
Hill Start Assist Precautions	163
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	163

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	164
Switching Auto Hold On and Off	164
Using Auto Hold	164
Auto Hold Indicators	164

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	166
How Does Traction Control Work	166
Switching Traction Control On and Off	166
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	166

Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work	168
Switching Stability Control On and Off	169
Stability Control Indicator	171

Steering

Electric Power Steering	172
Steering – Troubleshooting	173

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	174
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	174
Rear Parking Aid	175
Front Parking Aid	175
Parking Aid Indicators	177
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	178

Rear View Camera

Rear View Camera Settings	179
---------------------------------	-----

360 Degree Camera

How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	180
360 Degree Camera Precautions	180
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	180
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	180
360 Degree Camera Settings	181

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work	183
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	183
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	183
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	185
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation	186
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed	186
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	187
Canceling the Set Speed	188
Resuming the Set Speed	188
Overriding the Set Speed	190
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	190
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	190
Lane Centering	190
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	193
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	194

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	196
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	196

Table of Contents

Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	196	How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	206
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	196	Blind Spot Information System Precautions	206
Setting the Speed Limit	196	Blind Spot Information System Limitations	206
Changing the Set Speed Limit	196	Blind Spot Information System Requirements	206
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance	197	Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	207
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	197	Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	207
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	197	Blind Spot Information System Indicators	207
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	197	Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	208
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	197		
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	197	Exit Warning	
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	197	How Does Exit Warning Work	209
		Exit Warning Precautions	209
Lane Keeping System		Exit Warning Limitations	210
What Is the Lane Keeping System	198	Exit Warning Indicators	211
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	198	Switching Exit Warning On and Off	211
Lane Keeping System Precautions	198	Locating the Exit Warning Sensors	211
Lane Keeping System Limitations	199	Exit Warning – Troubleshooting	212
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	199		
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	199	Cross Traffic Alert	
Lane Keeping System Settings	199	What Is Cross Traffic Alert	213
Alert Mode	200	How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	213
Aid Mode	200	Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	213
Alert and Aid Mode	200	Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	214
Lane Keeping System Indicators	201	Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	215
Blind Spot Assist	202	Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	215
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	204	Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	216
		Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	216
Blind Spot Information System			
What Is Blind Spot Information System	206	Pre-Collision Assist	
		What Is Pre-Collision Assist	217

Table of Contents

How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	217
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	217
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	218
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off	220
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors	220
Forward Collision Warning	221
Automatic Emergency Braking	221
Evasive Steering Assist	221
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	222

Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition	224
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work	224
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions	224
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations	224
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators	225
Speed Sign Recognition Settings	225
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	225

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	226
How Does Driver Alert Work	226
Driver Alert Precautions	226
Driver Alert Limitations	227
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	227
Driver Alert Indicators	227
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	228

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	229
---------------------------------	-----

Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions	230
---------------------------------------	-----

Opening the Frunk	230
Closing the Frunk	231
Using the Frunk Emergency Release	232
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover	232
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor	233
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points	233
Luggage Compartment – Troubleshooting	234

Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions	235
------------------------------------	-----

Driving Hints

Performance Vehicle Precautions	236
Driving in Cold Weather	236
Driving Through Mud and Water	237
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain	237
Driving In Sand	237
Driving Through Shallow Water	238
Electric Vehicle	238
Floor Mats	239

Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions	241
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	242
Jump Starting the Vehicle	242
Post-Crash Alert System	244
Post-Collision Braking	245
Automatic Crash Shutoff	245
Recovery Towing	245
Transporting the Vehicle	246

Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	248
---------------------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

Emergency Towing	248
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	249

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	250
Under Hood Fuse Box	250
Battery Fuse Box	255
Body Control Module Fuse Box	256
Identifying Fuse Types	259
Fuses – Troubleshooting	259

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	260
Opening and Closing the Hood	260
Under Hood Overview	260
Coolant	261
12V Battery	264
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	264
Adjusting the Headlamps	265
Exterior Bulbs	266
Interior Bulbs	267

Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Excluding: GT	268
Vehicle Dimensions - GT	269

Vehicle Care

General Information	270
Cleaning the Exterior	270
Cleaning the Interior	271
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	273
Waxing Your Vehicle	273

Body Styling Kits

Body Styling Kit Precautions	274
------------------------------------	-----

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage	275
--	-----

Removing Your Vehicle From Storage	276
--	-----

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label	277
Information on the Tire Sidewall	277
Glossary of Tire Terminology	280
Tire Replacement Requirements	281
Using Summer Tires	282
Using Winter Tires	282
Using Snow Chains	283

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures	285
Inflating the Tires	285
Tire Rotation	286

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	287
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	287
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	287
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components	288
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	289

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	294
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	294
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	294
Viewing the Tire Pressures	294
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	294
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	295

Table of Contents

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	297
Wheel Nuts	298

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	300
Vehicle Identification Plate	300

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	302
Connected Vehicle Requirements	302
Connected Vehicle Limitations	302
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	302
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	302
Connected Vehicle Settings	303
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	303

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	305
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	305
Selecting the Audio Source	305
Media Control Buttons	305
Adjusting the Volume	305
Setting a Memory Preset	306
Muting the Audio	306
Adjusting the Sound Settings	306
Setting the Clock and Date	306
AM/FM Radio	306
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	307

Center Display

Center Display Overview	309
Status Bar	309
Settings	310
Driver Assistance Menu	311
Rebooting the Center Display	311

Voice Interaction

Ford Assistant	312
----------------------	-----

Phone

Phone Precautions	314
Connecting Your Phone	314
Phone Menu	314
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	315
Sending and Receiving a Text Message	316
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	317
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device	317
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	317
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off	317

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	318
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	318

Personal Profiles

How Do Personal Profiles Work	319
Enabling or Disabling Personal Profiles	319
Creating a Personal Profile	319
Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile	319
Selecting a Personal Profile	320
Deleting a Personal Profile	320

Navigation

Connected Navigation	321
Accessing Navigation	321
Navigation Map Updates	321
Adjusting the Map	321
Live Traffic	321
Setting a Destination	321
Waypoints	322
Route Guidance	323

Table of Contents

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates	324
Software Update Settings	324
Software Update Indicators	325

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	326
---------------------------------	-----

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	327
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	327
Radio Frequency Certification Labels	327
Replacement Parts Recommendation	327
Mobile Communications Equipment	328
End User License Agreement	329
Export Unique Options	343

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	344
-------------------------------------	-----

Contacting Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.

United States

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
PO Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
TDD for the hearing impaired:
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone
service provider)
www.ford.com/help/contact/

Ford Credit - US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For assistance call 1-800-727-7000, or for more information about Ford Credit and access to an account manager, visit www.ford.com/finance.

Canada

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)
TDD for the hearing impaired:
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone
service provider)
www.ford.ca

Australia

Ford Motor Company of Australia Pty Ltd.
Customer Relationship Centre
Private Mail Bag 5
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061
Telephone: (13 FORD) 13 3673
E-mail: foacust1@ford.com

New Zealand

Ford Motor Company
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre
Private Bag 76912
Manukau City 2241
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)
E-mail: fnzcust@ford.com

China - Imported Vehicle

Customer Relationship Center
Telephone: 400-690-1886
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

China - Chang'An Ford

Customer Relationship Center
Telephone: 800-810-8168
Mobile: 400-887-7766
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

Asia Pacific Direct Markets (APDM)

E-mail: apemcrc@ford.com

Caribbean, Central America and Israel

Ford Motor Company
Ford Export Operations
Attention: Owner Relations
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, MI 48101
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Telephone: (800) 841-3673
E-mail: atnclien@ford.com

U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico

Ford Motor Company
Ford Export Operations
Attention: Owner Relations
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, MI 48101
Telephone: (800) 841-3673
E-mail: atnclien@ford.com

Contacting Us

Argentina

Telephone: 0800-888-3673

Brazil

Website: www.ford.com.br
Telephone: 0800-703-3673
E-mail: central@ford.com

North Africa

E-mail: nafcrc@ford.com

South Africa

Telephone: 0860011022
Email: fordcrc2@ford.com

Sub-Saharan Africa

E-mail: ssacrc@ford.com

Puerto Rico

Ford International Business Development,
Inc.
P.O. Box 11957
Caparra Heights Station
San Juan, PR 00922-1957
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
Fax: (313) 390-0804
E-mail: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

Middle East

Ford Middle East Customer Relationship
Center
P.O. Box 21740
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Telephone: 80004441066
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi
Arabia: 8008443673
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi
Arabia: 800850078
Kuwait: 22280384
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965
1 898900
Fax: +971 4 3327266
E-mail: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

South Korea

Customer Relationship Center
Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003
E-mail: infokr1@ford.com
Emergency Dispatch Service call:
080-300-3673

Philippines

Telephone: 02-88669408
Email: emailus@ford.com

Taiwan

Telephone: 0800-032100
705 Zhonghua Rd., Sec. 1
Zhongli District, Taoyuan, Taiwan, 32068

Thailand

Telephone: 1383
E-mail: fordthai@ford.com

Vietnam

Telephone: 1800588888
E-mail: fordvn@ford.com

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: *Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.*

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Driver Assistance Systems

Your vehicle may contain certain Driver Assistance Systems (i.e., Pre-Collision Assist, Adaptive Cruise Control, Lane Keeping System, and BlueCruise). Use of these technologies still requires your complete attention while driving. Your hands need to be on the steering wheel at all times unless you are actively operating BlueCruise and your vehicle informs you that you do not need to have your hands on the steering wheel. With all driving technologies, your eyes need to be on the road, and you must be alert to your surroundings. Your complete attention is required while driving since you may need to take immediate control due to the presence of roadway hazards or a change in road, weather, or lighting conditions. Use of these features does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Always be prepared to manually control the speed and direction of your vehicle. Please refer to this manual for information pertaining to each Driver Assistance feature.

Aftermarket Modifications, Add-ons, Accessories, and Repairs

Unapproved modifications to your vehicle may affect your vehicle's height or suspension and could shift the sensors out of the position from which they were designed and tested. Unapproved aftermarket parts or add-on accessories could also block or interfere with your vehicle's sensors or electronic systems.

Do not modify your vehicle with unapproved aftermarket products or repairs. Unapproved modifications may affect your vehicle warranty, performance, safety, or durability. We are not responsible for any damage or adverse effects caused by unapproved modifications to your vehicle or its systems.

Introduction

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

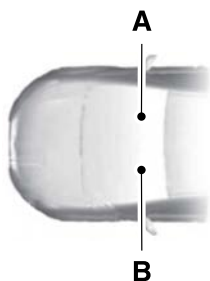
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

If your vehicle is connected, you can find the latest version of the Owner's Manual through the Owner's Manual icon on the touchscreen. If your vehicle is not connected, then a code is displayed on the touchscreen. Scan the code with your smart device which leads you to the same version of the Owner's Manual online. This is the most up-to-date content and may vary slightly from any material originally provided with your vehicle.

Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

Accessing the Digital Service Portfolio - Europe only

You can find the in-vehicle Digital Service Portfolio through the Service Portfolio icon on the touchscreen. It contains information about the Warranty, the service intervals, the body and paint check intervals applicable to your vehicle and contact information to help you if you need assistance.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Introduction

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.



USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit <https://www.helminc.com> or see an authorized dealer.



In Europe, visit <https://www.z-order.eu> or see an authorized dealer.



For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

Symbols Glossary

SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 80).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 84).



Front fog lamps.



Rear fog lamps. See **Using the Rear Fog Lamps** (page 82).



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 81).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 81).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 80).



Exterior bulb failure. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 266).

Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 155).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 155).



Electric parking brake fault. See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 157).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 155).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 164).



Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 164).

Visibility



Windshield washer fluid level. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps** (page 79).

Electric Motor



Motor coolant temperature. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 261).



Non-emission powertrain fault. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 128).

Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - engage.



Selectable drive mode - whisper. See **Whisper** (page 150). See **Whisper** (page 150).



Selectable drive mode - unbridle.



Selectable drive mode - unbridle extended.



Selectable drive mode - rally sport.



Steering system fault. See **Steering – Information Messages** (page 173).

Symbols Glossary

Driver Assistance



Cruise control. See **Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control** (page 190).



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 190).



Speed Limiter. See **Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 197).



One pedal drive. See **One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 152).



Lane keeping assist. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 199).



Lane keeping assist off. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 199).



Lane centering assist. See **Lane Centering Indicators** (page 193).

Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 38).



Airbag. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 43).



Stability control system active or not available. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 171).



Stability control system off. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 171).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 295).



Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 222).



Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off** (page 207).



Icy road conditions. See **Climate Control – Warning Lamps** (page 104).



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 53).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 227).



Driver alert system 2.0 off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 227).

Security



Hood release/ajar. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 260).



Liftgate release/ajar. See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 66).

Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 264).



Ready to drive. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 124).

Symbols Glossary



Hybrid/electrical system failure.

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 128).

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 128).



External cord connected. See

Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps (page 143).



Limited performance mode. See

High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps (page 128).

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 128).

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information. Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Driver attentiveness processed by the driver-facing camera, if equipped.
- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.

- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed. For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Data Privacy

BlueCruise Data (If Equipped)

If BlueCruise is active in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, the system may record driver attentiveness, based on the direction of eyes and duration, and photographs of the driver seat area.

Note: No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information, subject to your settings. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Subject to your settings, the vehicle may send data such as Vehicle Data, Driving Data and Location Data.

Note: The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 302).

Note: The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit <https://www.fordconnected.com>.

Note: If you buy or sell a vehicle, review the privacy settings and perform a factory reset.

Note: Check privacy settings after the vehicle has been reset to ensure they reflect your choices.

Data Privacy

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device** (page 317).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device.

We recommend a system reset when no longer using the system or vehicle. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 326).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module. For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit <https://www.fordconnected.com>.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

If your vehicle is equipped with an emergency call system, then when the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery if equipped. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

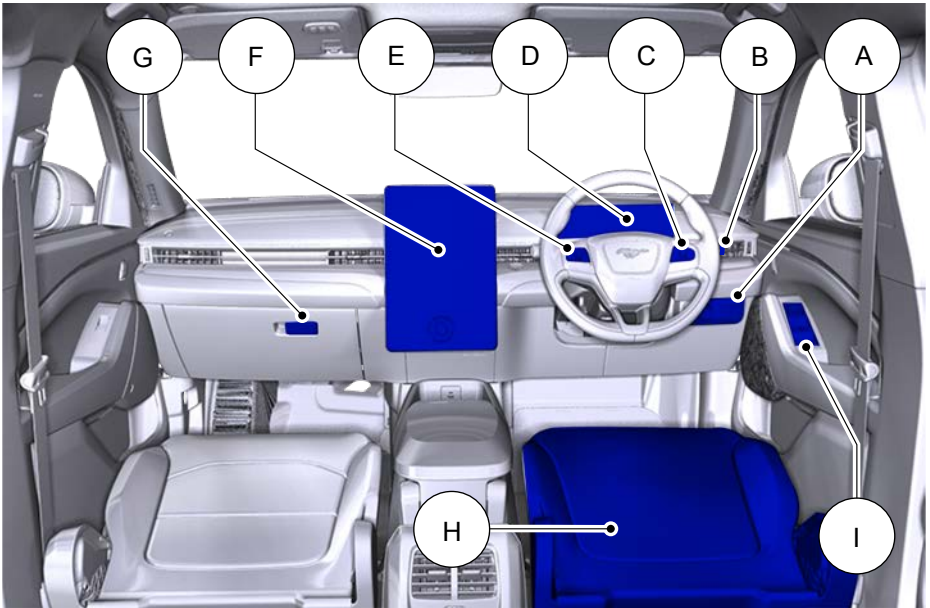
PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

Visual Search

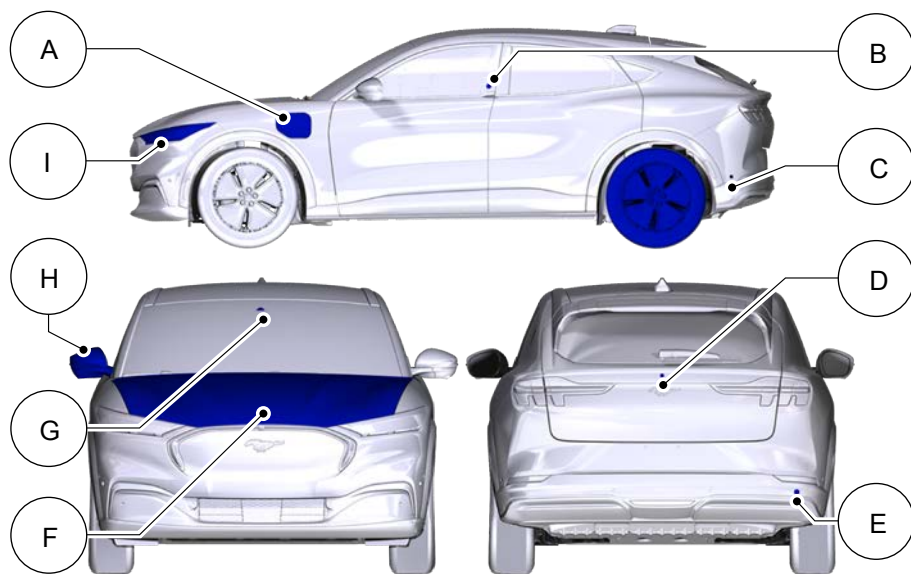
INTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 80).
- B See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 144).
- C See **Using Ford Assistant** (page 312).
- D See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 96).
- E See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 185).
- F See **Center Display Overview** (page 309).
- G See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 123).
- H See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 106).
- I See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 94).

Visual Search

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Locating the Charge Port** (page 130).
- B See **Using Keyless Entry** (page 56).
- C See **Tire Replacement Requirements** (page 281).
- D See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 180).
- E See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 175).
- F See **Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle** (page 230).
- G See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 220).
- H See **Folding the Exterior Mirrors** (page 94).
- I See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 80).

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Children must always be properly restrained.



WARNING: This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. We strongly recommend that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.



WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



WARNING: EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



WARNING: Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.



WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.



WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Child Safety



WARNING: Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.

SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



WARNING: Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.



WARNING: Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

Note: Always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearward position. If it proves difficult to achieve seatbelt routing according to the child restraint instructions, adjust the seat backrest and move the seat only as far forward as necessary.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

Note: Side curtain air bags do not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

Child Safety

When a child restraint system is not in use, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure that you properly secure it. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around your vehicle in a crash or sudden stop and injure someone.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

Upper - Top Tether Anchorages



WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.



WARNING: Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.



WARNING: Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.



WARNING: Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.



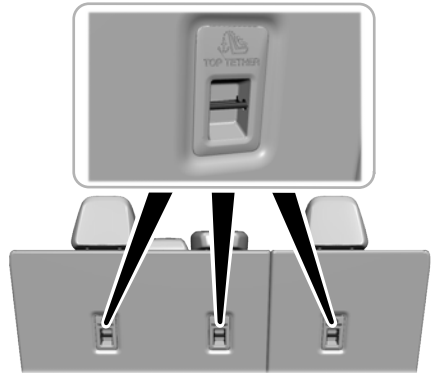
WARNING: Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.



WARNING: Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

There are three child restraint top tether anchorages, one for each rear seating position.

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later.

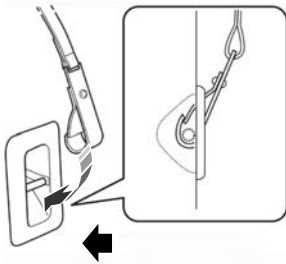


1. Route the tether strap over the back of the seat.
2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor.

Child Safety



Note: Arrow points to front of vehicle.

If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

ISOFIX Anchor Points



WARNING: Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: When you are purchasing an ISOFIX seat, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations.



E213581

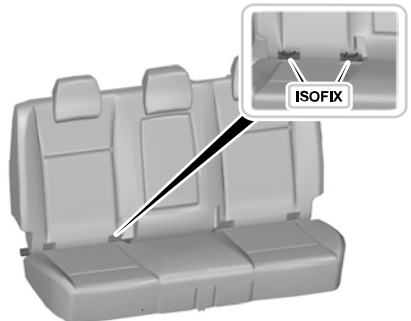
Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

ISOFIX Lower Anchorages



WARNING: The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX lower anchorages in the lower backrest of the rear seats.



E132631

Child Safety

Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers



WARNING: Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



1. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
2. Tighten the tether strap as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

PROTECTING LARGER CHILDREN

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

Typical Booster Seat



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.

Child Safety

**WARNING:** Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.

**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.



CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

The control is on the driver door. It enables both the child safety locks and the rear window locks.

Press the control to switch the child safety locks and the rear window lock on. Press the control again to switch them off. A light on the control illuminates when you switch them on.

The child lock and rear window lock settings remain active when you switch your vehicle off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Child Safety Locks – Information Messages

Message	Action
Child lock fault See manual	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.



WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



WARNING: Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



WARNING: Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.



WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

See **Front Seats** (page 106). See **Manual Seats** (page 111).

Seatbelts

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS



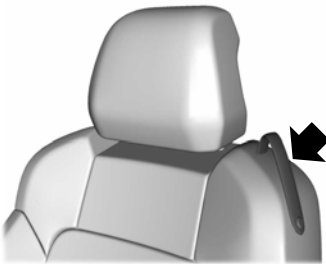
WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



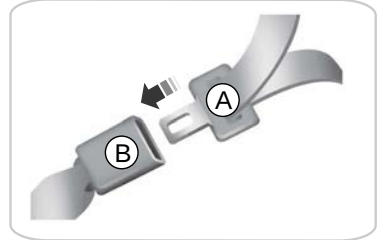
WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

A web guide is included on the outermost side of the front seats. Depending on occupant size and seating position, you may need to route the belt through the guide for a proper fit. If the seatbelt does not route across the middle of the shoulder, route the belt through the web guide.

Coupe



All seatbelts in your vehicle are three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelts.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

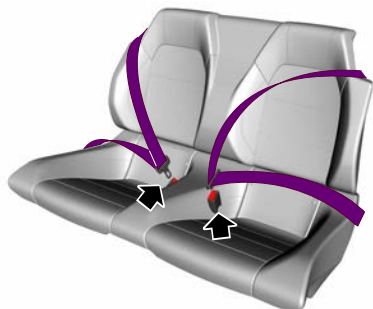
1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

Seatbelts

Rear Seats



Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

WHAT IS SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

HOW DOES SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE WORK

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 8 km/h or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.

If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

WHEN TO USE AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Use this mode any time you install a child restraint in a front outermost passenger seating position or any rear seating position. Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in a rear seat whenever possible.

Note: *Automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.*

Seatbelts

ENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

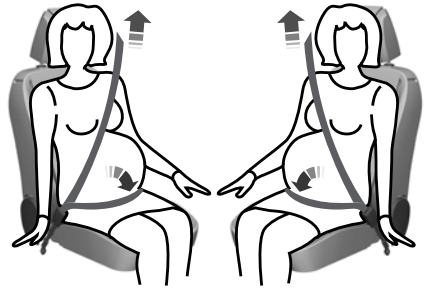
DISENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



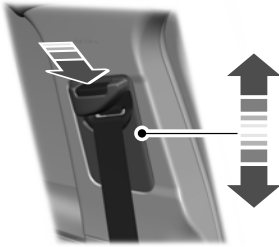
Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Seatbelts



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS



WARNING: The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This feature provides an audible or visual alert when you or an occupant unfastens a seatbelt.

The alert remains on until:

- You open and close a door.
- You fasten the seatbelt for any occupied seat.
- You switch the vehicle off and then on.



This lamp illuminates and a warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The lamp and tone turn off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute elapses.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, the system provides more warnings for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates and a warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

Note: To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the seat.



This warning displays and a tone sounds if an occupant unfastens a seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

Note: If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning does not display.

Note: Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the power on. The tone switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute elapses.

Seatbelts

When the initial warning expires for the driver, the system provides more warnings for the driver and front passenger. This warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

This tone also sounds if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS

To view the seatbelt status, use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel.



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Fault.
- D Seatbelt recently unfastened or for your seat and seats with occupant presence detection not fastened when you start your vehicle.

CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Check all of the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Front seatbelt buckle assemblies.
- Seatbelt pretensioners.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.
- Child restraint anchors and top tethers.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts.

Status after a Crash



WARNING: Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

Seatbelts

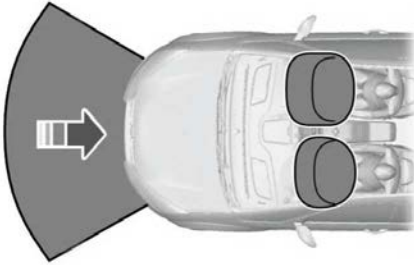


WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front and rear seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag deploys.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front and rear seat backrest. In certain sideways crashes or rollovers, the airbags inflate. The airbags inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.



The rear side airbag will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat.

The system consists of:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that your vehicle has side airbags.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests, as well as side airbags inside of each outermost rear seat backrest.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 43).

Airbags

HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



WARNING: Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The driver knee airbag is under or within the instrument panel.

During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the knee airbag based on crash severity and respective occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the knee airbag may deploy but the corresponding front airbag may not activate. It is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



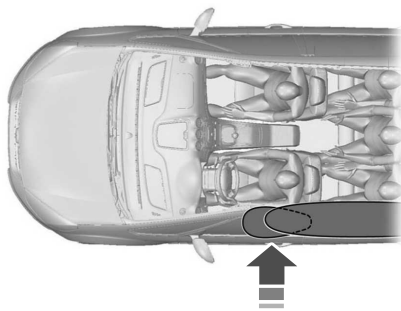
Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**

(page 43).

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbags deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the airbags will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the airbag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.



WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Airbags



WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



WARNING: Modifying or adding equipment to the front of your vehicle could affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. This includes the hood, bumper system, frame, front body structure, tow hooks, hood pins, push bar and snowplows.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These sensors provide information to the restraints control module which activates the following:

- Front and rear seatbelt pretensioners.
- Driver airbag.

Airbags

- Passenger airbag.
- Knee airbag(s).
- Front and rear seat mounted side airbags.
- Safety Canopy.

Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. This module indicates the readiness of the safety system by displaying a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster. If the warning light is not working, the system sounds a tone as a backup. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the power on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays on.
- You hear a series of five tones. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, seatbelt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The front airbags activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes. Front airbags may activate in rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts if the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The seatbelt pretensioners activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The knee airbag deploys based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The side airbags inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The Safety Canopy inflates in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

Pedestrian Protection

WHAT IS PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION

An advanced safety system that protects pedestrians during an impact with the vehicle. The bumper has sensors that can detect a pedestrian impact and trigger the deployable hood.

HOW DOES PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION WORK



The deployable hood system releases the hood hinges and raises the rear edge of the hood by about 10 cm. This increases the gap between the hood and the components within the front compartment. It provides additional cushioning in case the pedestrian makes contact with the hood.

The system has caution labels under the hood near the hood lifters.



These labels show the location of the hood lifters for service and emergency personnel.

The system is active when you drive between 20 km/h and 50 km/h.

After an impact that has activated the system, the hood rises and remains permanently attached to the vehicle, by the hood hinges and latch. Do not drive the vehicle when the hood has been deployed. If the deployable hood system has been activated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, and transport the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.

You can open the hood using the hood latch after the deployable hood has been triggered. Make sure the hood is securely closed and latched before transporting the vehicle.

Note: Do not add any equipment to the front of the vehicle that is not authorized by us. This may include hood supports, hood pins or push bars.

PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle if the hood has been deployed.

Pedestrian Protection



WARNING: Do not place your hand or objects or mount equipment on or near the hood lifters that may come into contact with a deploying hood lifter. Failure to follow these instructions may cause serious injury during a deployment.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the deployable hood system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If the deployable hood system activates, it will not function again. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION INDICATORS



If a fault is detected in the system, the monitoring system turns on the readiness indicator in the instrument cluster.

If the readiness lamp is lit, do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to a qualified technician.

Pedestrian Alert System

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

A valid remote control must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1 m from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- The remote control frequencies are jammed.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows, moonroof or other controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

Note: The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.

One-Stage Unlocking



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 52).

Two-Stage Unlocking (If Equipped)



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 52).

Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 52).

Front Luggage Compartment (If Equipped)



Press the button twice within three seconds to open the front luggage compartment. See **Luggage Compartment Precautions** (page 230).

Liftgate



Press the button twice within three seconds to open the liftgate. See **Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control** (page 63).

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



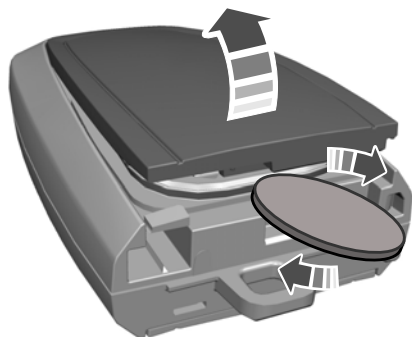
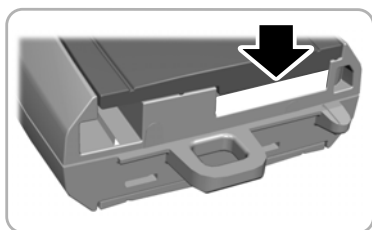
CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

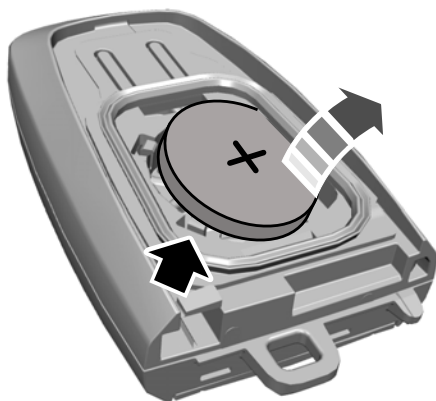


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Key In Reminder

Sounds when the following conditions are met:

- Vehicle is out of park (P).
- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver's door.
- You have left the key inside the vehicle.

USING THE VALET MODE

What is Valet Mode

The valet mode allows you to limit the access to some features on the touchscreen.

Enabling Classic Valet Mode

Make sure the remote control is in your vehicle.

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode.
2. Enter a four digit code to lock the touchscreen.
3. Re-enter the same four digit code to complete enabling valet mode.

Disabling Classic Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.
2. Enter your four digit code to disable valet mode and unlock the touchscreen.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Replace remote control battery.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

One-Stage Unlocking



Press the button to unlock all doors.

Two-Stage Unlocking (If Equipped)



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms your vehicle is locked.

A tone sounds when you press the lock button twice within three seconds on the remote control to confirm your vehicle is locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Before using double locking, check to make sure no one is inside the vehicle. Never activate double locking when an occupant is inside. Once double locking is activated, the doors cannot be opened or unlocked from the inside, which could prevent occupants from exiting the vehicle.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction

indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See **Keyless Entry** (page 56).

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Doors and Locks

Note: The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door using the interior door handle.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock only works if all the preconditions are met:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h.
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Autounlock on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked after requesting a lock.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the turn signals do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Mislock Chirp on or off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the vehicle on and remains on if any door is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door ajar	
Rear left door ajar	
Rear right door ajar	
Hood ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

How do I unlock my vehicle if the 12 volt battery is dead?

You must apply 12 volt power to the 12 volt system. See **Preparing the Vehicle** (page 242). See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 244).

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m of the front door handles and liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function (If Equipped)

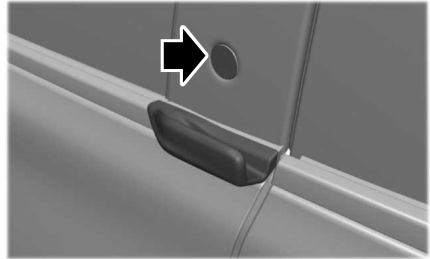
You can enable the two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors



With your remote control or authorized phone within 1 m of your vehicle, press the touchpad on the door window trim to unlock and open the door.

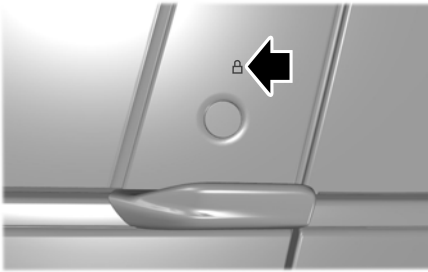
Opening the Liftgate with Passive Key (If Equipped)



Press the exterior liftgate release button inside the liftgate handle. The liftgate unlocks and opens. See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 68).

Keyless Entry

Locking the Doors



With your remote control or authorized phone within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the lock icon on the door window trim to lock the door. The keyless entry system requires a brief delay to authenticate your device.

Note: The door activation switch flashes one time to indicate the vehicle locks.

Note: Do not use the outside door handle as a roof cargo strap.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function, check to see what may be causing the limitation. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 56).
- If the system still does not function, use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Keyless Entry Keypad

WHAT IS THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keyless entry keypad allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle using the keypad on the window trim.

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD LIMITATIONS

The system may not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.

LOCATING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is near the driver window and illuminates when you touch it.



KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD MASTER ACCESS CODE

What Is the Master Access Code

The master access code is a factory-set five-digit entry code. You can operate the keypad with the master access code at any time. The master access code can be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Displaying the Master Access Code in the Instrument Cluster Display

Read and understand the following before you begin the process.

- You must have two keys inside your vehicle.
- Make sure that you close all the doors and that they remain closed throughout the procedure.
- Do not place the device on the wireless accessory charging area during the procedure.

Note: Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. If you perform any of the steps out of sequence, stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again.

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Place the first key into the backup slot. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 125).
3. Turn on the vehicle, without pressing the brake pedal, and wait for a few seconds.
4. Turn off the vehicle and replace the first key with the second key.
5. Turn on the vehicle, without pressing the brake pedal.

The master access code appears in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds.

Note: The code may not display until after other warning messages display.

Keyless Entry Keypad

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD PERSONAL ACCESS CODES

Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.
4. Press **1-2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1 through 3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3-4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5-6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7-8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9-0** to save personal code 5.

If your vehicle comes with the operating system, you can also program the system with one personal entry code.

Note: *Programming a code using the operating system overwrites any code that was already saved on the position 9-0 of the Keypad.*

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The five-digit master code works even if you have set your own personal code.

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.

2. Press and release **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1-2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the five-digit master code works.

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition on.
- You unlock your vehicle using keyless entry.

USING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

Unlocking the Driver Door



Keyless Entry Keypad

Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other.

Note: All doors unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled. See **Keyless Entry Settings** (page 56).

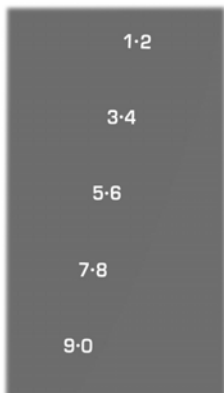
Unlocking All Doors

Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code, then press 3-4 within five seconds.

To Release the Frunk

Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code, then press 7-8 within five seconds.

Locking the Doors



Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** at the same time with the driver door closed.

Note: You do not need to enter the code first.

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keypad not accept the access code?

If you enter the access code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Slowly re-enter the access code.

Why does the keypad not function?

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter a wrong code seven times. The anti-scan mode disables the keypad for one minute and the red light flashes.

Easy Entry and Exit

HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver seat rearward up to 5 cm when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat returns to its previous position when you switch the ignition on.

SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Easy Entry/Exit.

If you press any adjustment or memory button while in Easy Entry or Exit mode, the system will cancel the Easy Entry or Exit mode operation.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate settings on the touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 309).



Press the liftgate icon.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

Note: If an authorized device is within 1 m of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

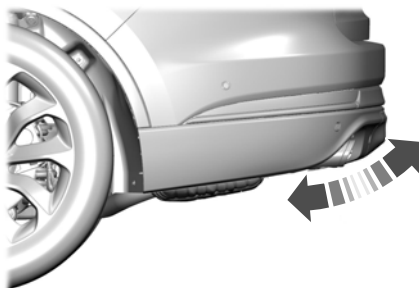
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the authorized device away from the rear bumper detection area.

SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

Note: You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

Note: The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate settings on the touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 309).



Press the liftgate icon.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

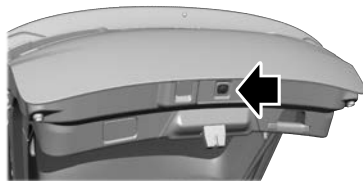
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. The liftgate could come into contact with objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press and release the liftgate button. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

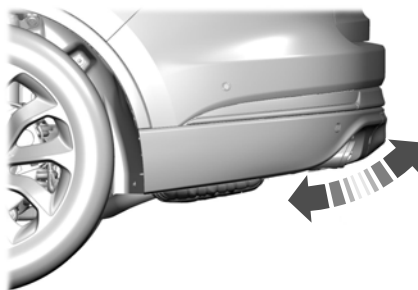
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

Note: A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

Note: Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

Note: Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate ajar	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate and then lift to open.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate using the outside control button.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

Note: The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: Do not cover the interior sensors.

Note: If you set the cabin comfort level for your departure time with the alarm armed, the interior sensors deactivate for the duration of the cabin preconditioning to avoid a false alarm.

Security

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is a standalone alarm sounder that has its own internal circuitry and a recharging battery which is charged when the engine is running. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system or if the battery backup sounder itself becomes unplugged from the vehicle's electrical harness. The alarm sounds from its own power source if that occurs.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Arm the alarm by locking your vehicle.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors with the remote control or keyless entry feature.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting.

In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, the interior sensor and the inclination sensor are off when you arm the alarm.

All the other equipped sensors activate when you arm the alarm in this mode.

Note: *Motion sensor settings are turned on each time you start your vehicle.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Alarm System.
3. Press Motion Sensors and choose a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch your vehicle off.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to all sensors.*

Security

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Alarm System.
3. Press Ask on Exit.
4. Switch Ask on Exit on or off.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm To stop alarm, start vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

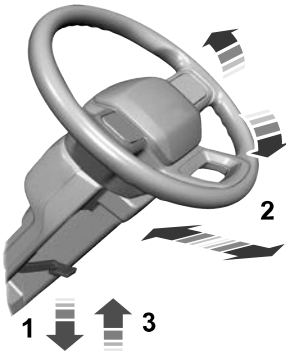
Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 106).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position you prefer.
3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the power is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the power on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen. An indicator illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: The vehicle must be switched on to use the heated steering wheel.

Steering Wheel

Note: A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.

Note: The heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle, depending on the remote start settings. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the vehicle was switched off.

Note: In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

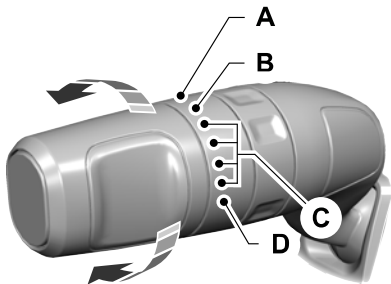
WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A High-speed wipe.
- B Low-speed wipe.
- C Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.
- D Off.



Use the rotary control to operate the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers, when turned on, automatically control the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers if the rain sensors detect moisture on the windshield.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

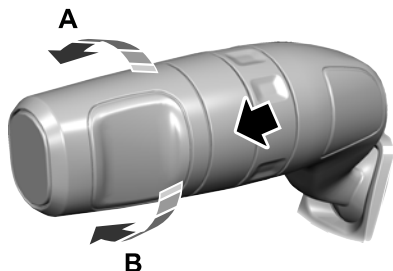
AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rain sensing on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature on, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

Wipers and Washers

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



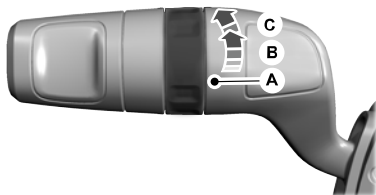
- A High sensitivity.
- B Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Continuous wipe.



Use the rotary control to operate the rear window wiper.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rear wiper on or off.

Wipers and Washers

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

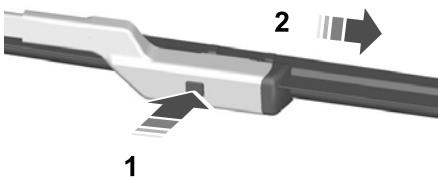


Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arms to service position, doing so may damage the wiper motor. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

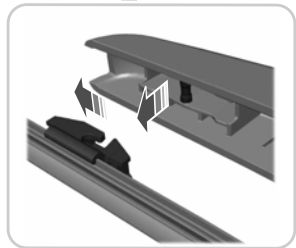
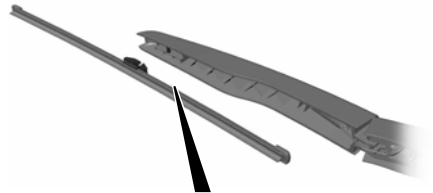
2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Wipers and Washers

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

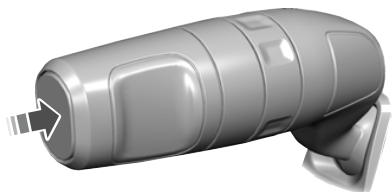


WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5°C, use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

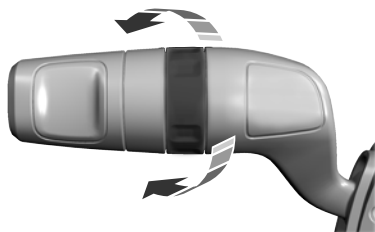
Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 78).

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Courtesy Wipe on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature on, the wipers make an additional single wipe at the end of the washer request. When you switch it off, the wipers finish the current washer request.

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position to operate the rear window washer.

Wipers and Washers

ADDING WASHER FLUID



WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Windshield Washer Fluid	WSS-M14P19-A

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low for vehicles equipped with a washer fluid level sensor.

WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

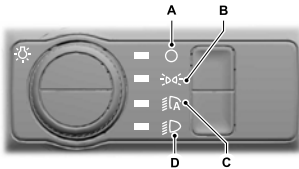
Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 77). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 77).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL

The exterior lighting control is on the dashboard to the left of the steering wheel, where you can access the following settings.



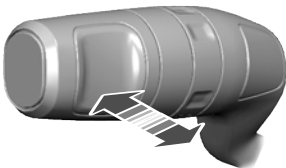
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Exterior Lighting

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

Autolamp Exit Delay

You can adjust the amount of time the autolamps remain on after you switch off your vehicle. Use the touchscreen to choose a delay setting.

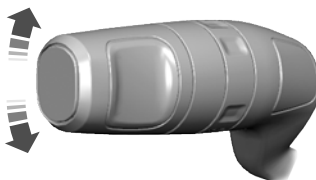
1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Press Autolamp Delay.
4. Select a setting.

Note: If the setting is off, the external lamps switch off immediately when you shut down your vehicle.

Note: You can pull the turn signal toward you to manually switch off the autolamp exit delay.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Exterior Lighting

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: *When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the rear fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.*

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: *Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator

-  It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

SWITCHING WELCOME LIGHTING ON AND OFF

The system turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device, unlock your vehicle or interact with any of the doors. If you open or close any door, the lamps stay on for a short period of time to provide courtesy lighting.

Note: *Welcome lighting still displays when you use your remote control to unlock your vehicle or interact with any of the doors.*

To switch the system on or off:

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Welcome Lighting on or off.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle's configuration, you may not have the option to switch the feature on and off.*

To conserve power, the system may not work when you are approaching your vehicle if:

- The 12-volt battery is low.
- The system was triggered a number of times prior to starting the vehicle.
- The vehicle is left unused for a few days.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

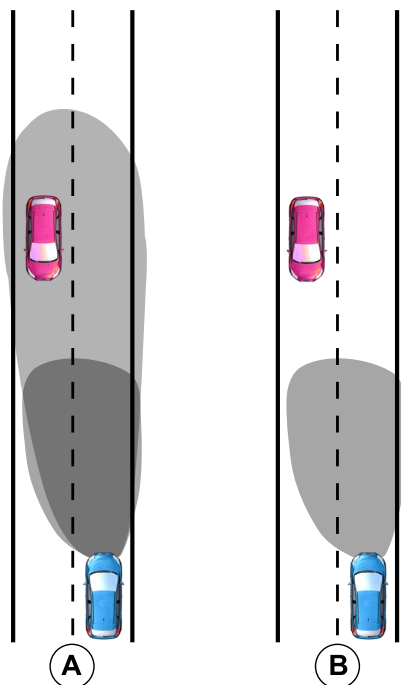
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Exterior Lighting



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



WARNING: Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

Exterior Lighting

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

Note: The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

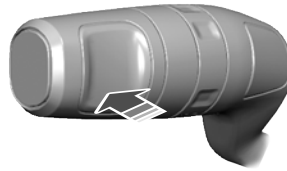
1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Auto High Beam on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

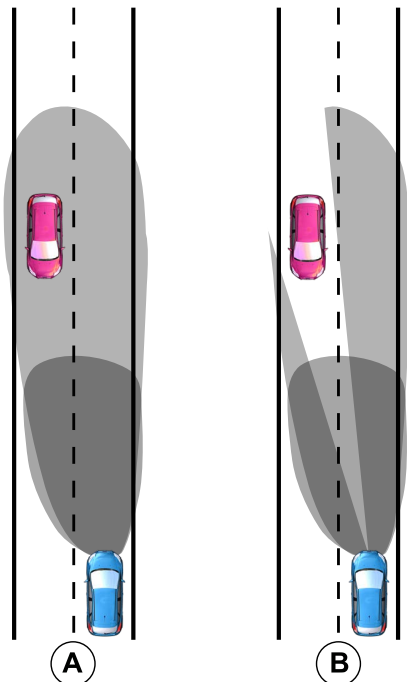
Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

HOW DOES GLARE FREE LIGHTING WORK

Glare free lighting enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.



- A Without glare free lighting.
- B With glare free lighting.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not adapt the light.

WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

Exterior Lighting

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).

2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Glare Free Lighting on or off.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE LIGHTING



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch glare free lighting back on.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the exterior lamps?

- Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration or speed.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- Standing water or a water puddle inside the lamp. Condensation with drip marks present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.



Press the button on the overhead console to switch all interior lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console.

Note: The position of each button on the overhead console depends on your vehicle.

Individual Map Lamps



Press to switch the left-hand individual dome lamp on and off.



Press to switch the right-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.



Press to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.

Note: The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off.

Interior Lighting

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



Note: There are six levels of brightness adjustments available during the day and twelve levels of brightness adjustments available at night.

AMBIENT LIGHTING - VEHICLES WITH: AMBIENT LIGHTING

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior of your vehicle in your choice of colors.

The ambient lighting controls are on the touchscreen and to access, press General from the settings menu and then scroll down to the Ambient Lighting menu.

Switching Ambient Lighting On

Press the desired color or drag the slider above the zero brightness to switch on the ambient lighting.

Changing the Color

Press the desired color.

Adjusting the Brightness



Drag the slider up or down to adjust the ambient lighting intensity.

Switching Ambient Lighting Off

Drag the slider to zero brightness to switch off the ambient lighting.

INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Lift again or press it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to open or close the windows with the ignition off.

Windows

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote open on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING (If Equipped)



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 91).

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote close on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift and hold the window control switch within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

Note: If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Windows

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.

When the rear window lock/child safety lock switch is engaged, the window switches mounted on the rear door panels are deactivated.



The control is on the driver door. It enables both the rear window locks and the child safety locks.

Press the control to switch the rear window locks and child safety locks on. Press the control again to switch them off. A light on the control illuminates when you switch them on.

The rear window lock and child lock settings remain active when you switch off your vehicle.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

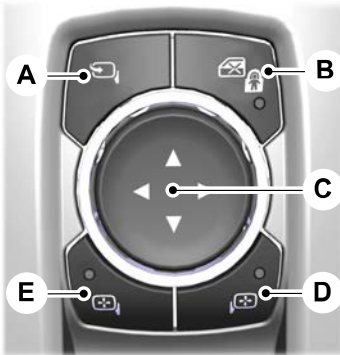
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Power fold.
- B Window and child safety lock.
- C Adjustment control.
- D Right-hand mirror.
- E Left-hand mirror.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the push button start in accessory mode or your vehicle running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: *This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors autofold on.*



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: *Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.*

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with autofold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: *The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

Note: *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.*

Switching Autofold On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Mirrors.
3. Switch Autofold on or off.

Loose, Noisy or Intermittently Working Mirrors

If you manually fold the power folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. Reset the mirrors if:

- They vibrate when you drive.
- They feel loose.

Exterior Mirrors

- They do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.
- The mirrors are intermittently working.

To reset the power fold feature, use the power folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Operate the power folding mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

If the above process does not help you to fix the mirror, perform the following steps.

1. Fold or retract both mirrors manually.
2. Using the power folding control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

Directional Indicator Mirrors

When your vehicle is running, the forward facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Locating the Memory Function Buttons** (page 116).

Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone. If your vehicle has auto folding mirrors, the puddle lamps are only on if the mirrors are unfolded and turn off when the mirrors fold.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 103).

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 180).

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 206).

AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR

The driver exterior mirror dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

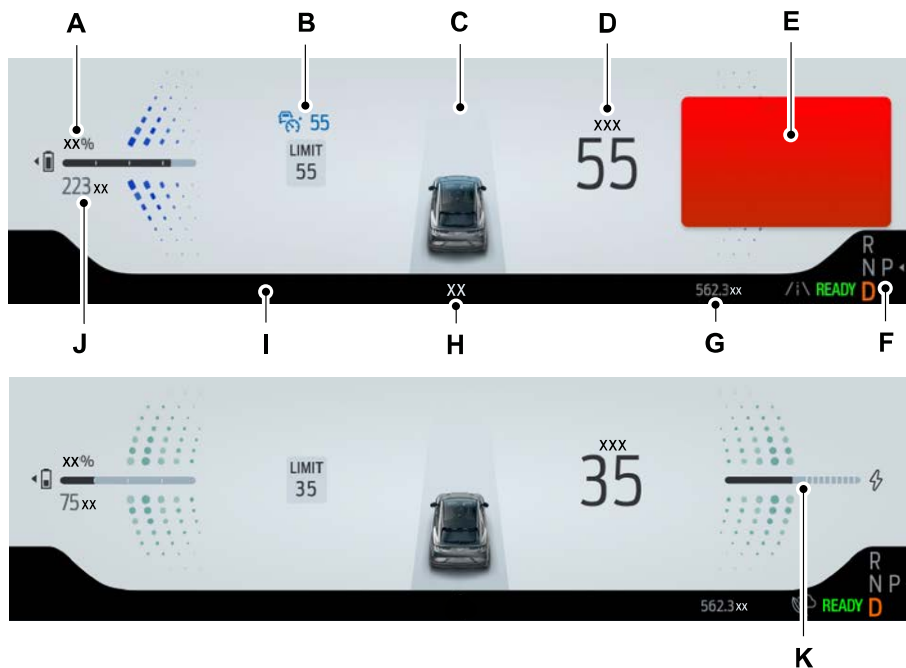
Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW

Note: The instrument cluster display can be customized to display information in several different layouts. Maximum zone complexity shown.

Note: The instrument cluster display changes based on feature settings selected in the center display screen or set with steering wheel controls. See **Settings** (page 310).

Note: The pop-up message display area fully occupies the power gauge area when a pop-up warning is active.



- A High voltage battery gauge.
- B Driver assist message display area.
- C Driver assist area.
- D Speedometer.
- E Pop-up message display area.
- F Gear indicator.

Instrument Cluster

- G Odometer.
- H Outside air temperature.
- I Information bar.
- J Range display area.
- K Power gauge.

POWER GAUGE

The power gauge displays the amount of power going to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When the system limits the available maximum power, the right side of the gauge shows gray lines representing the proportional reduction in available power. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the amount of power the regenerative system captures and returns to the high voltage battery.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the speed of the vehicle to the driver at any given moment.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel on the battery's current state of charge. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving and the energy available in the high voltage battery.

The amount of energy your vehicle uses when driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on flat or hilly roads.
- Towing.

The available energy capacity in the high voltage battery is affected by cold temperatures and battery degradation. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 127).

If you power on your vehicle while pressing the brake pedal and your navigation system has an active route, the distance to your destination or next charging station displays.

Note: *It is normal for the vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage and battery temperature. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 238).*

Note: *When you leave your vehicle unplugged, it periodically uses energy from the high voltage battery to recharge the 12-volt accessory battery, resulting in a reduced driving range.*

EV Driving History

The EV Driving History feature learns your driving habits and energy consumption to provide more accurate range estimates. Resetting this feature erases the learned data and temporarily reverts range estimates to factory defaults until the system relearns your driving behavior.

Instrument Cluster

Resetting EV Driving History

You can reset the EV Driving History through the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Using the Instrument Cluster Display

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select Settings.
2. Scroll and select EV Driving History.
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Using the touchscreen

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Scroll to **EV Driving History: Press and Hold to Reset.**
3. Press and hold until a confirmation message appears in the touchscreen.

You can also reset the EV Driving History using the Charging app in the App menu. See **Center Display** (page 309).

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge in the form of a gauge or a percentage. A full fill or 100% charge represents the total amount of energy you get from plugging in your vehicle.

The gauge is normally black. When a low battery condition is reached the gauge is amber. When the battery is depleted the gauge is red.

If you power on your vehicle without pressing the brake pedal, or if your vehicle is plugged in, the full battery gauge displays.

Charging Status

Additional charge information is displayed when your vehicle is plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your vehicle charge settings on the touchscreen. See **Charging Settings** (page 138).

Charge Required to Reach Destination

When the full battery gauge is displayed and your navigation system has an active route, a symbol is added that represents the high voltage battery charge level needed to reach your destination or next charging station. In this state, if your vehicle is also plugged in and your current battery charge level is less than the level required to reach your destination or next charging station, the time when your vehicle reaches the level of charge required to arrive at your next stop is displayed.

BRAKE COACH

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery.

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu on your touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Switch Brake Coach on or off.

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. From the app launcher, press Trips. See **Center Display** (page 309).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. From the app launcher, press Trips. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Trip 1 or Trip 2.
3. Press Reset.

Note: *The current trip resets every time you start your vehicle.*

TRIP DATA

Trip data includes distance, time and energy economy. Better energy economy, meaning greater efficiency or lower consumption, results in increased driving range.

Where Did My Energy Go

Displays a breakdown of energy consumption for your trip.

- Climate Use – This includes energy used by your vehicle's high voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater.
- Driving and Route – This includes energy used to propel your vehicle based on your driving style and route. Your driving style includes how fast you drive and whether your acceleration and braking is mild or aggressive. Your route includes factors such as the amount of city or highway driving and road grades.

- Accessories – This includes energy used for low voltage accessories such as climate system fans, heated seats and lighting.
- Exterior Temperature – This includes energy losses due to outside temperature and other conditions which reduce vehicle system efficiency.

How Is My Driving

Displays scores for trip driving behavior. Higher scores result in better energy economy.

- Acceleration – Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking – Slow and steady braking improves your score.
- Speed – Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores. Your score rapidly drops above 112 km/h.



You can view additional trip data by pressing the icon on your touchscreen.

Climate Control

IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Use the controls in this area to change the climate inside of your vehicle.

Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: The maximum defrost button is also on the lighting control.

Note: To prevent the window from fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Climate Control

Note: The heated rear window and windshield (if equipped) turn on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF

When E-Heat is on, an electric heater warms the cabin and keeps the windows from fogging. Turning E-Heat off saves battery power, which extends your driving range. The electric heater is the only source of heat to warm the cabin.



Press the button to access climate control.



Press the button to turn the electric heater on and off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system maximizes your driving range.

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system activates or runs with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

To manually switch off the heated windshield at any time, press the button again.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

Note: The heated windshield automatically turns off after the windshield is expected to be clear based on the current outside temperature.

Note: The heated windshield remains on after remote starting the vehicle, based on your remote start settings.

Note: During initial start-up, the windshield has a shimmering appearance. This is normal and only lasts for one minute.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window, this could damage the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Climate Control

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 102).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Note: When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

Climate Control

Note: Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

CLIMATE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



Illuminates when the outside air temperature is between 4°C and 0°C.

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM REFRIGERANT



WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Your vehicle has an under hood label that identifies the refrigerant used by the air conditioning system.

Note: Only allow a trained and certified technician service the refrigerant system to ensure proper and safe operation, as per local regulatory requirements.

Note: Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator with one from a salvage vehicle. Only replace it with a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

The meaning of each symbol on the under hood label are as follows:



Caution



Air conditioning system.



System lubricant type.



See vehicle service manual for service information.



Requires registered technician to service.



Flammable refrigerant.



Replace safety system components. Do not repair, reuse or try to salvage.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

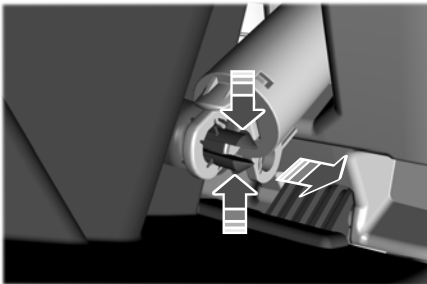
REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

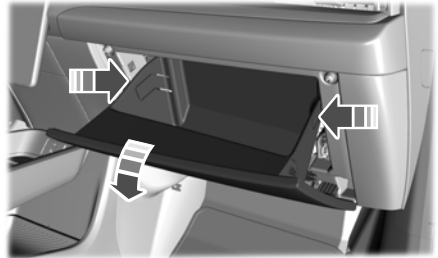
The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

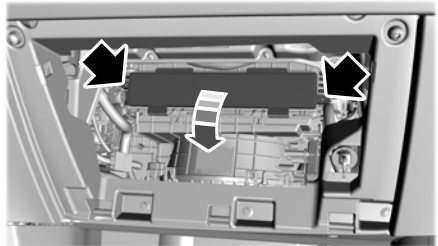
1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Detach the damper by depressing the tabs and pulling it away from the glove compartment.



3. Press the tabs on each side to release the glove compartment.



4. Fully lower the glove compartment.
5. Unclip both sides of the filter door and swing door down to access filter.



6. Remove the old filter and replace with a new filter.

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

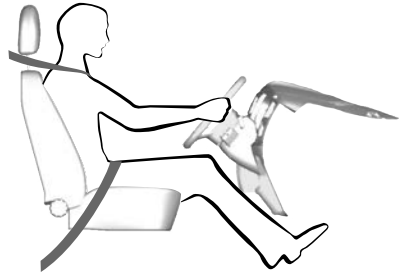
WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.

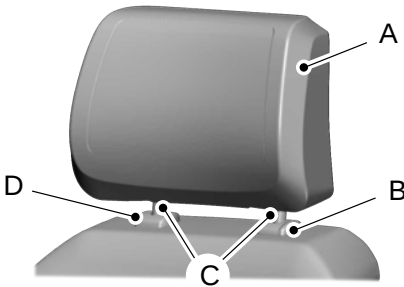
Front Seats

- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

POWER SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT FIXED HEAD RESTRAINTS



The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam pad and plastic finish panels covering the upper structure of the seat backrest.

Properly adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT ADJUSTABLE HEAD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Front Seats



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

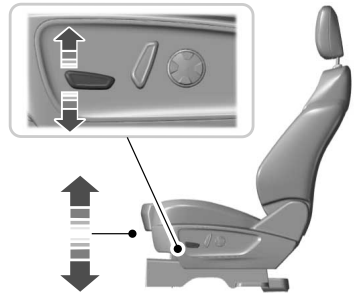
REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

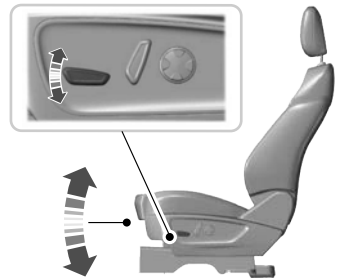
INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



Tilting the Seat Cushion



Your vehicle may be equipped with this feature.

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

Front Seats



HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.



Press the heated seat symbol on the touchscreen, then select your preferred heat level or off.

The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

You can also press the heated seat symbol on the audio volume knob, then select your preferred heat level or off.

Note: Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

Automatic Heated Seats

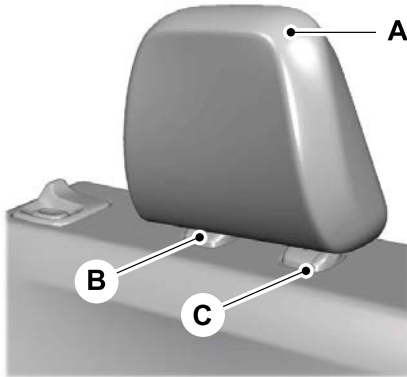
When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

Rear Seats

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

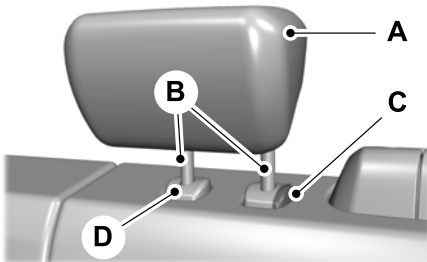


WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



The outermost head restraints are non-adjustable.

Pull the center head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the center head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Rear Seats

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before removing the head restraint.
2. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
3. If your vehicle has these buttons, press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
4. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



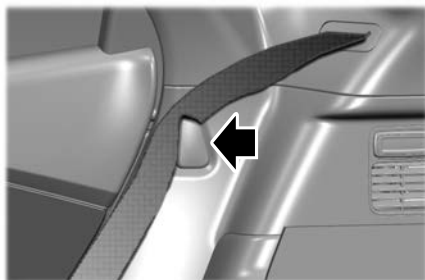
WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.



WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



Press the button and fold the seat backrest forward.



When the rear outermost seat backrests are folded, place the seatbelts in the stowage clip. This prevents the seatbelt from getting caught when the backrest is unfolded.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

Rear Seats



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest up to unfold it. Make sure the seat latch engages.

Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When Child Seat Installed is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When Child Seat Installed is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the Rear Occupant Alert is set to Alert & Horn. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Select Alert & Horn or Alert Only or Off.

Note: The default setting is Alert Only.

Note: If you choose Alert only, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: You may also be able to switch the system off through the alert when it appears.

Note: Performing a system reset switches the system on.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Switch Child Seat Installed on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a LATCH system child seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

If the system is switched off, a reminder message appears on April 1st and October 1st. You can turn the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS

When you turn off your vehicle after the alert conditions have been met, an image and message briefly appear on the touchscreen, reminding you to check the rear seat for occupants.

Acknowledge and dismiss the message by selecting the close option.

Note: The graphic may be different for your vehicle.



Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

Memory Function (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.

MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Switch the vehicle on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release a preset button.

Note: You can recall a preset memory position when the vehicle is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the vehicle is on and it is not moving.

Note: Pressing any of the preset buttons during a memory recall cancels the operation.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your remote control if you linked it to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked remote control is present.

Using a linked remote control to recall your memory position when the vehicle is off moves the seat and steering column to the easy entry position.

Linking a preset position to your remote control or passive key. See **Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile** (page 319).

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

USB A



USB C



Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports are in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.

Note: These USB ports can also charge devices.

Note: Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

Note: We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports are in the following locations:

- Inside the media bin below the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to the USB port.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 309).



Press the USB option.

USB Ports

Note: If USB device was not the previous source.



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.



CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports

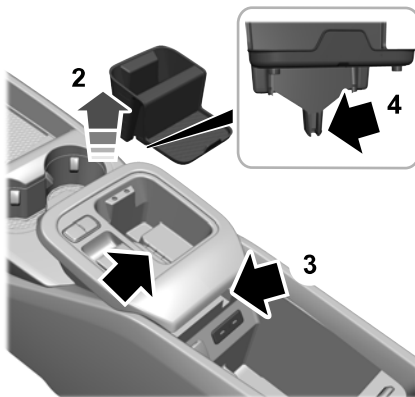


You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Connecting a device to USB ports inside the center console

You can connect your device to the USB ports inside the center console using the following steps.

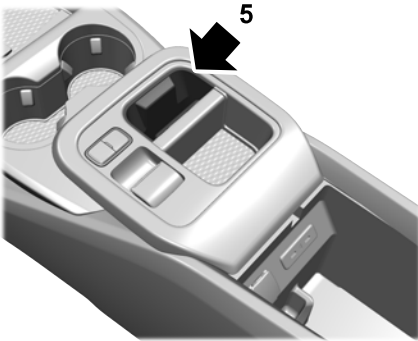
1. Locate the charge only USB ports and the power cord inside the center console.



2. Remove the center console storage mat.

USB Ports

3. Connect the power cord into the port and route the power cord through the opening and push into the storage area.
4. Insert the power cord through the opening in the center console storage mat.



5. Replace the mat and pull the extra cord from the console. Connect the device and place it in the slot.

Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the power outlets to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.

To prevent damage to the vehicle's battery:

- Do not use the power outlets over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow.
- Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
- Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power outlets caps closed when not in use.
- Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power outlets.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- Inside the center console.
- In the cargo area.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is in the front console below the instrument panel.

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.

Wireless Accessory Charger



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Note: *The use of streaming services and other applications while the device is charging can decrease charging efficiency.*

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

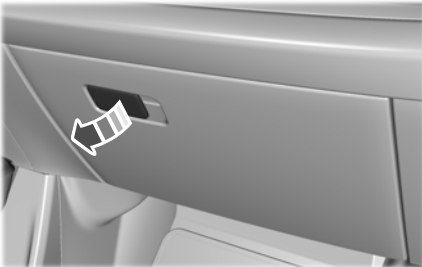
CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

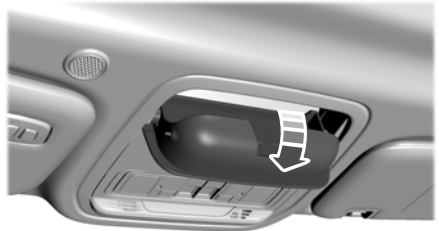
OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Pull the latch to the left to open the glove compartment.

GLASSES HOLDER

LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



The glasses holder is in the overhead console.

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

Starting and Powering Off

STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button start.

READY

When you start your vehicle, a green indicator appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

POWERING OFF



WARNING: Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and press the push button start to restart your vehicle.

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).

RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Starting and Powering Off

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open the driver's door for 2 seconds or longer while your vehicle is on and the selector is in park (P), you cannot shift out of park (P) if the system does not detect a valid remote control device.

VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

WHAT IS THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

Vehicle power down timer automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been powered on and stationary for an extended period of time.

HOW DOES THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the instrument cluster display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the instrument cluster display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save battery energy.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).

2. Switch Vehicle Power Down Timer on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the vehicle power down timer. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the vehicle on.

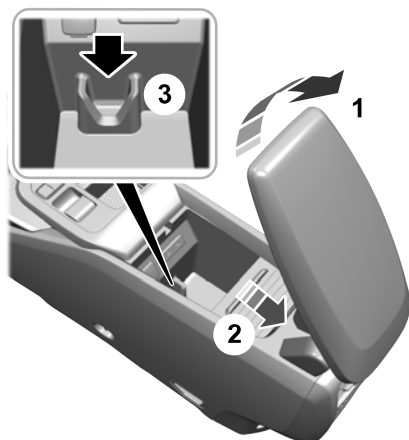
OVERRIDING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

You can stop the shutdown or reset the timer before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



Starting and Powering Off

3. Place the passive key into the backup slot.
4. With the passive key in this position, press the brake pedal, then press the push button ignition to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 125).
- The system does not function if the 12-volt battery has no charge. 12-volt battery depletion can occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

High Voltage Battery

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electric energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Note: If you are unsure of the battery type used in your vehicle locate the vehicle identification label located on the dash board or driver door. If the 8th vin digit is a 4 or 5 you have a Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) battery, and if there is any other digit or letter you have the Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) style battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the Ford app. Charge Scheduling improves the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit.

Extended Range Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) Batteries

Set your preferred charging times to be at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to 90% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

Standard Range Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Batteries

Set the maximum charge level to 100% and charge to 100% at least once per month to maintain range accuracy.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort feature. This will not only warm or cool the cabin but also condition the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

High Voltage Battery

DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. This is more pronounced on the standard range battery pack versus the extended range battery pack. See **DC Charging** (page 135).

Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0°C and 45°C is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

At temperatures just above the freezing point or lower, you should plug your vehicle in to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

Storage State of Charge

When storing your vehicle for an extended period of more than 30 days follow the instructions below depending on your vehicle's battery type.

Extended Range Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) Batteries

During regular use, you can increase the battery life by maintaining the state of charge below 100%. The battery state of charge should be at approximately 50%. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

Note: *To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 138).*

Standard Range Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Batteries

During regular use, you can increase the battery life by maintaining the state of charge at 100%. When storing for an extended time that the battery state of charge be at approximately 50%. See **Charging Settings** (page 138).

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery



Illuminates blue under normal conditions. If it illuminates amber, the battery is low on charge. If it illuminates red, the battery is depleted.

Limited Performance



Illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

High Voltage Battery

Stop Safely



Illuminates if an electrical component requires service or a

failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter into a limited operating mode.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Stop safely now Exit vehicle in safe area	Safely stop and exit your vehicle as soon as possible, then call for emergency assistance.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

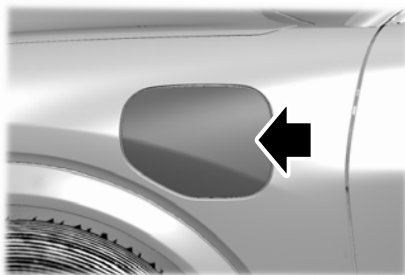


WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall

plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is between the front left-hand side door and front left-hand wheel well. To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

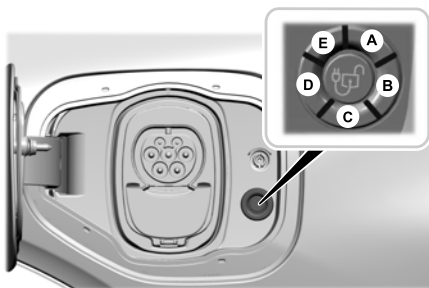
The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

Charging Your Vehicle

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When zone A is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When zone A illuminates, and zone B is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When zones A and B illuminate and zone C is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When zones A, B, and C illuminate, and zone D is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When zones A, B, C, and D illuminate, and zone E is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.



Note: When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly illuminated in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then A, B, and C light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:

White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging.

Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

Amber is used to indicate charge faults.



Note: Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.

Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates solidly in an amber color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes amber continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME



1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

Charging Your Vehicle

2. Press the center right edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

Ending the charge at 100% maximizes the driving range for your next trip. Ending the charge at 80% or lower helps to preserve the health of the high voltage battery. Charge rates are significantly slower above 80% state of charge.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

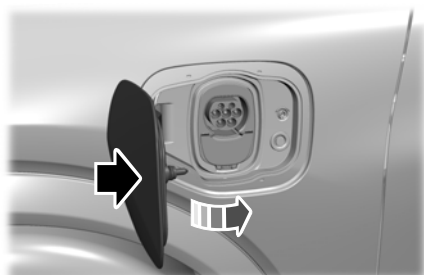
Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING IN PUBLIC

AC charging helps preserve high voltage battery health, for longer battery life.

When outside temperatures are very high or low keep your vehicle plugged in during AC charging. This allows the system to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When using an AC charge station with cables attached.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

2. Press and release the center right hand edge of the charge port door to open the door.

3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

Ending the charge at 100% maximizes the driving range for your next trip. Ending the charge at 80% or lower helps to preserve the health of the high voltage battery. Charge rates are significantly slower above 80% state of charge.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged, the light ring illuminates, indicating that the normal charge cycle has started.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to the vehicle's internal communications.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the vehicle touchscreen as well as the Ford app, including pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Charging rates vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Note: If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the Ford app may not function as intended.

Note: Depending on the region, the public charging app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

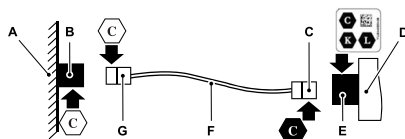


AC charging helps preserve high voltage battery health, for longer battery life.

When outside temperatures are very high or low keep your vehicle plugged in during AC charging. This allows the system to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When using a public AC charge station without built-in cables, plug your charge cord into the station and into your vehicle's charge port. Make sure the symbol on the station matches the one on your vehicle's charge port.

Always fully unwrap the public charge cord before charging.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge station port.
- C Vehicle charge coupler.
- D Vehicle.
- E Charge port receptacle.
- F Public charge cable.
- G Charge station charge coupler.

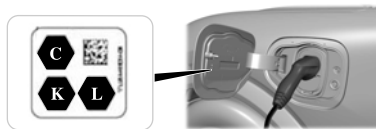
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

2. Press and release the center right hand edge of the charge port door to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station port.
4. Plug your public charge cord into the charge station port.

Note: To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.

5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: When the handle is properly engaged, the light ring illuminates, indicating that the normal charge cycle has started.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to the vehicle's internal communications.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the vehicle touchscreen as well as the Ford app, including pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Charging rates vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Note: If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the Ford app may not function as intended.

Note: Depending on the region, the charge assist app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

When charging your vehicle at a charge network station, use the Ford app to activate and pay for charging.

At Plug & Charge capable stations, charging starts automatically when you connect the charge cord. If the station is not part of your vehicle's charging network, follow the instructions on the station to start charging manually.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

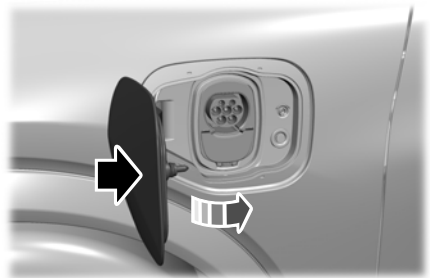
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

DC CHARGING



To charge the high-voltage battery at a charge station:

Charging Your Vehicle

When using the charge station with cables attached.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

2. Press and release the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to open the door.
3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.



4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Make sure the button clicks, confirming that the vehicle has locked to the charge coupler.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged, the light ring illuminates, indicating that the normal charge cycle has started.

Note: The vehicle monitors battery health and may take actions including, but not limited to, reducing the DC fast charge rate to protect the battery hardware from damage, and to maintain battery health.

Ending the charge at 100% maximizes the driving range for your next trip. Ending the charge at 80% or lower helps to preserve the health of the high voltage battery. Charge rates are significantly slower above 80% state of charge.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the vehicle touchscreen as well as the Ford app, including pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Charging rates vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Note: If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the Ford app may not function as intended.

Note: Depending on the region, the public charging app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

Stopping Charging

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle



2. Close the dust cap for the additional lower connectors.

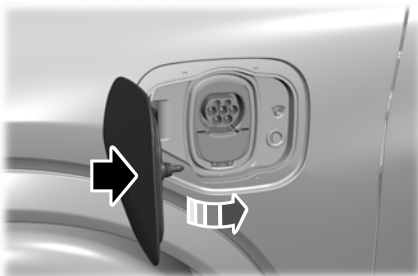
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so can lead to damage to your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can unlock the cord through the vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



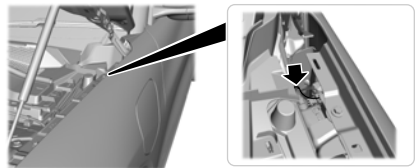
3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE

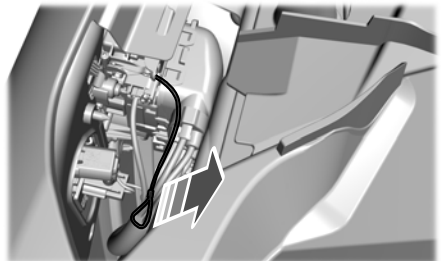
If your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler, you can manually release it.

Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the hood.
3. Remove the inner luggage compartment shields. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 232).



4. Between the gap of the hood and windshield, access the manual release mechanism and pull the pull ring firmly, perpendicularly towards the center of your vehicle. Once pulled, make sure you do not tangle the pull ring cord as it resets on the next charge session.



Charging Your Vehicle

5. Remove the charge coupler from the charge port.
6. Reinstall the inner luggage compartment shields. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 232).
7. Close the hood.

Note: The next time you plug in to charge your vehicle, the locking mechanism re-engages and the pull ring resets.

CHARGING SETTINGS

You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower electricity rates during off-peak hours, if you are enrolled in a time-of-use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a maximum charge limit, a departure time, and a preferred cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up in the touchscreen or in the Ford app.

To view your charge settings:

1.  Press to open the settings menu.
2.  Press to view charge settings.

Charge Status

Shows the present state of charging system.

Charge Status	Details
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the Ford app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Fast charging	The vehicle is plugged into a DC fast charge station and charging.

Charging Your Vehicle

Charge Status	Details
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.
Charge station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charging station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charge station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charging station.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Estimated Vehicle Driving Range

Displays the estimated distance the vehicle can travel with the current high voltage battery charge level. See **Vehicle Range Display** (page 97).

Live Charging Information

When the vehicle is charging, the following information is displayed on the charging screen:

- Live Charging Power.
- Live Charging Current.

Note: *Live charging current is displayed only when the vehicle is AC charging.*

Charge Speed Limitation Status

When the vehicle is charging, the reason for the charging speed limitation displays.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: This information is only displayed on those vehicles that show the maximum power capability.

Charge Speed Limitation Status	Details
Charging at max speed	The vehicle is charging at the maximum rate of charge it can accept in its current state.
Charging at max charger speed	The vehicle is charging at the maximum rate of charge the charger can deliver.
Charging at selected rate	The vehicle is charging based on the AC Rate selected.
Charger providing less power	The vehicle is charging at a rate lower than the maximum charge rate it can accept in its current state because the DC station is providing less power than expected. It is suggested to charge at another charger to achieve a higher charging rate.

Charging slows after 80%	The vehicle is charging at a rate lower than the maximum charge rate it can accept in its current state because above 80%, charging rate is expected to slow down.
Slow charging to avoid overheating	The vehicle is charging at a rate lower than the maximum charge rate it can accept in its current state to avoid overheating.
Warming battery for fast charging	The vehicle is charging at a rate lower than the maximum charge rate it can accept in its current state to prepare battery for fast charging.

Target Charge

Displays the charge percentage where charging stops. You can adjust this percentage using the main slider.

Note: Daily and Trip labels are displayed to suggest the target charge for each of these usages considering battery life and vehicle range.

Charging End Time

Estimated end time displays while charging.

If your vehicle is at a saved charging location but not plugged in, the system shows estimated end time based on available charging options at that location.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: *Charging time is estimated and can vary.*

Departures Times Card

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

Press the departures times card to access the departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: *While your vehicle is plugged in, it can use energy from the charging source to manage battery temperature and precondition the cabin. This helps improve driving performance and can reduce energy use at the start of your trip, helping to maximize range.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the Ford app.*

Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.

Preferred Charge Times Card

Displays the preferred charge times set for the current location.

Press the preferred charge times card to set preferred charge times for a specific charging location.

When you are at a saved charging location, your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred charge schedule. You can set one preferred charge time for weekdays and another one for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: *For saved charging locations, your vehicle charges during your preferred charge times. Charging outside these charge time windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge level by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the Ford app.*

Departure and Comfort

Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level.

Note: *The departure and comfort settings do not apply when connected to a DC fast charger.*

1. Press the departures times card on the charge settings screen.
2. Select a time for each day of the week you want your settings to apply. Select the hour and minutes as well as your desired comfort level. Your selected days or times now display your departure and comfort settings. Press save to apply your settings. The departures times card on the charge settings screen updates appropriately.

Note: *Save your departure settings before selecting additional days or times. The process must be repeated in order to add additional unique departure times and comfort levels.*

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: Cabin comfort may vary depending on your power source. Standard household outlets provide less power than higher-capacity chargers, which can limit heating or cooling performance. In cold weather, the vehicle may use some battery power to help warm the cabin if charging power is low.

Preferred Charge Times

Follow these steps to set preferred charge times for a charging location.

Note: The vehicle uses your current location to create the new charge schedule. Before saving a new location, make sure that the vehicle has successfully charged at that location for at least a few minutes.

Note: Charging location settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.

1. Press the preferred charge times card on the charge settings screen.
2. To add the current charging location, press the add location button. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations.
3. Edit the nickname of the location and press the next button.

Note: Location names cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

4. Set one preferred charge time for weekdays and weekends by specifying if the charging time applies to weekdays or weekends and the start and end time of the charge time. After defining the preferred charge times for weekdays and weekends, press the save button to store the settings.

Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

5. Return to the previous screen and see the summary of the preferred charge times for this location. Press the back arrow to return to the charge settings screen or press the location to change its settings.

Note: Reaching your target charge by your next departure time is always the priority. When preferred charge times are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary in order to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle typically begins charging right away after plugging in.

Advanced Menu

Allows you to limit the current rate when AC charging.

AC Rate

Follow these steps to set the AC rate and limit the current anytime the vehicle is AC charging.

1. Press the advanced menu on the charge settings screen.
2. Set the AC rate using the slider.
3. Return to the previous screen to save the value set.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The Ford app allows you to:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the charging network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.

Charging Your Vehicle

- Automatically initiate a charge session at Plug & Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your connected charge station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.



CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Is vehicle plugged in? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure you unplugged your vehicle and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery	Indicates that the high voltage battery can no longer support the 12 volt battery due to its low range. Plug in your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12 volt battery at a healthy state.
Charging station fault See manual	Your plugged in vehicle detects a fault with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	Your plugged in vehicle cannot communicate with the charging station. Please contact the station provider.

Electric Motor

SELECTOR POSITIONS

ELECTRIC MOTOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



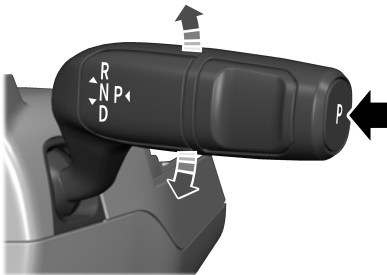
WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The selector is on the steering column.



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).
3. Move the selector two positions up to select reverse (R).
4. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
5. Press the park (P) button to select park (P).

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 156).

Electric Motor

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **How Does Roll-Away Protection Work** (page 146).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

SELECTOR POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Note: The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your 12 volt battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 volt battery to run out of charge.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: If the battery has run out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.

3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.

Electric Motor

4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

Note: You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.
- Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.
10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

ELECTRIC MOTOR AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Vehicle Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION

HOW DOES ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION WORK

Roll-away protection is normally active. It secures the vehicle by automatically shifting to park (P) if the driver exits or switches the vehicle off without shifting to park (P).

Roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated. When deactivated the vehicle is free to roll even if the driver exits the vehicle, such as in an automatic car wash.

Note: You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with the power on.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. See **Towing Your Vehicle** (page 248).

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION LIMITATIONS

When roll-away protection is deactivated, the vehicle is free to roll. Make sure to avoid unwanted vehicle movement. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle reactivates roll-away protection if any of the following occur:

- You shift into park (P).
- You select a position other than neutral (N).

Electric Motor

Roll-away protection may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver shifts out of park (P) with the seatbelt unbuckled and the driver door open.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

Note: *The neutral (N) indicator on the selector may flash in this mode.*

Switching the Roll-Away Protection On

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

Note: *If drive (D), low (L) or reverse (R) is selected, the vehicle is ready to drive.*

SWITCHING THE ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION ON AND OFF

Switching the Roll-Away Protection Off

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Power your vehicle on.
3. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

5. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling.

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 236).

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

The all-wheel drive system is not intended for use with mismatched tires.

Different tire sizes between the front and rear axles can cause system damage.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
AWD temporarily disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD restored	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.
AWD Off	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function.
AWD fault Service required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

This feature connects multiple vehicle systems through a single interface, providing you with enhanced vehicle control and driving dynamics for different driving scenarios, terrains, weather, or various road conditions.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Select an available drive mode.

Note: Drive mode changes may not be available when your vehicle is off.

DRIVE MODES

ACTIVE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. Steering is tuned for normal driving. The interior lights and cluster graphics are set to soft blue and the battery state of charge gauge displays.

ACTIVE - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. Steering and active damping are tuned for normal driving. The interior lights and cluster graphics are set to soft blue and the battery state of charge gauge displays.

UNTAME - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Untame mode is for sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a strong deceleration rate when you lift off the accelerator pedal. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a sportier steering feel. The interior sound increases, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic that grows based on your acceleration and steering inputs.

UNTAME - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Untame mode is for sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a strong deceleration rate when you lift off the accelerator pedal. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a sportier steering feel. Active damping is tuned for performance. The interior sound increases, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic that grows based on your acceleration and steering inputs.

Untame Plus



This feature adjusts untame mode to provide high-performance driving and is for track and closed course use only. When you activate, this mode provides balanced power output for lap time consistency. The accelerator pedal calibrates for improved propulsion control. The system provides more performance orientated traction and stability control. In this mode, traction and

Drive Mode Control

stability control intervention reduces and tunes specifically for track usage only. The interior sound has increased presence and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic related to your acceleration and steering inputs.

To use this feature, you must be in untame mode with the untame plus slider selected with the battery at operating temperature. When using this mode, one pedal drive is not available and other driver assistance features disable.

Note: *This feature is only available when the HV battery state of charge is above about 10%, the ambient temperature is above -18°C and the HV battery temperature is warm.*

WHISPER - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Whisper mode is for relaxed driving and adverse weather conditions. This is the best mode for driving in slippery conditions. This mode decreases accelerator response at partial inputs. Steering tunes for comfort. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle slowly decelerates allowing for a more comfortable ride. The interior sound turns off and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to blue with a graphic that starts to illuminate blue as you drive efficiently at consistent speeds.

WHISPER - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Whisper mode is for relaxed driving and adverse weather conditions. This is the best mode for driving in slippery conditions. This mode decreases accelerator response at partial inputs. Steering and active damping tunes for comfort. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle slowly decelerates allowing for a more comfortable ride. The interior sound turns off and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to blue with a graphic that starts to illuminate blue as you drive efficiently at consistent speeds.

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to active. When the system defaults to active, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.*

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Drive Mode Control

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why did the system default to active mode?

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to active mode and the driveline settings remain the same before the system fault.

Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for track use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from engage mode or active mode to whisper mode.

How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?

- After switching modes, the new drive mode activates within several seconds, if all the appropriate preconditions are met.

How should I decide which drive mode to use?

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For available drive modes, See **Drive Modes** (page 149).

Will drive modes impact my vehicle's energy consumption?

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle's energy consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style also affects the energy consumption.

One Pedal Drive

WHAT IS ONE PEDAL DRIVE

One pedal drive allows you to accelerate, slow down and stop using only the accelerator pedal. Pressing the accelerator down accelerates your vehicle, releasing pressure on the accelerator with your foot still on the pedal slows down your vehicle and releasing the pedal completely allows your vehicle to come to a complete stop if the road grade is not excessively steep.

See **One Pedal Drive Precautions** (page 152).

ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Shifting into neutral (N) does not hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move if the accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Note: Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

One pedal drive is not available in the following situations:

- Shifting into an incorrect transmission position, such as park (P), when driving.
- Using cruise control.

- Selecting untame plus drive mode (GT only).
- Turning off stability control.

Releasing the accelerator pedal may not bring your vehicle to a complete stop on steep grades.

Increased vehicle load may reduce the accelerator's ability to slow the vehicle.

SWITCHING ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Switch 1-Pedal Drive on or off.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

If your accelerator pedal becomes stuck or trapped:

- Apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce power.
- Bring your vehicle to a complete stop and place it in park (P).
- Switch the power off.
- Apply the parking brake.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. If your vehicle has to be towed, we recommend that you contact a professional towing service.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 260).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

Brakes



Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 154).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

Note: *We recommend you to use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: *To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.*

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

Brakes

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is occasional brake noise normal

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear, and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 270).

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



The electronic parking brake switch is on the center console.

Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake. The red warning lamp flashes, then steadily illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 144).

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency. Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the power on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 244).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h. Release the electric parking brake before continuing to drive.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow brake service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). It functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h.

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.*

Note: *The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.*

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Reverse Brake Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).

2. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert, the reverse brake assist relies on input from only the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays for a few seconds when the system applies the brakes.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Make sure the rear parking aid and cross traffic alert systems are switched on. Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed and no vehicle add-on devices or modifications are interfering with the system. Make sure the rear view camera is clear and the mirrors are not folded while in reverse if 360 degree cameras are installed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What are the precautions to be followed when using the reverse brake assist system?

- The system uses a combination of rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors for operation. Poor visibility or low lighting conditions can impact performance. Make sure the rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors are not dirty or obstructed.
- Reverse your vehicle slowly. On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to road infrastructure, for example sloped driveways and textured surfaces behind the vehicle or objects close to the reversing path.

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 160).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 213).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on.
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 166).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.

- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 175). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 215).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill Start Assist not available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Switch Auto Hold on or off.

Note: You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 156).

Note: While auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) with your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold releases the brake. However, while auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) without your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold continues to apply the brakes. In this case, the driver pressing the brake pedal causes auto hold to release the brake.

The following situations can cause auto hold to not work:

- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.

Auto Hold



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF

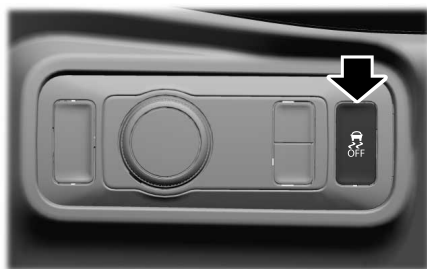


WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system turns traction control and stability control on each time you power on your vehicle.

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

If you press the switch, it turns traction control off.



When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear in the instrument cluster.

Press the switch again to turn traction control on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



The traction control light temporarily illuminates on start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition. The light stays on if a problem occurs in the system.



The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.

Traction Control

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
AdvanceTrac On	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing power.

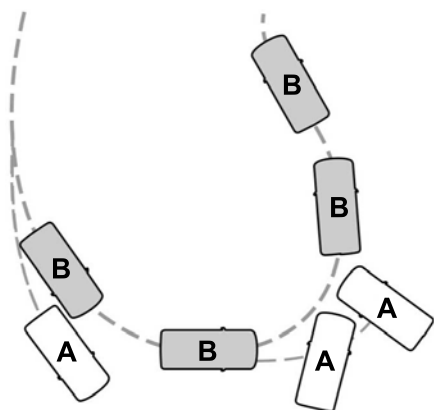
Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **What Is Traction Control** (page 166).

Stability Control



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

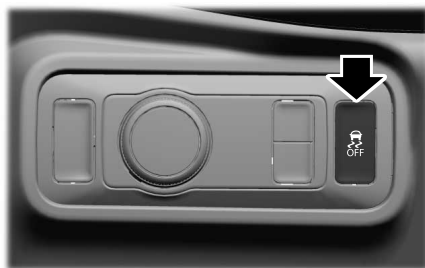
SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns traction control and stability control on each time you power on your vehicle.

You can switch these systems off by using the button to the left of the steering wheel.

If you press the button, it will turn traction control off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 166).

If you press and hold for 5 seconds, it turns stability control off.



Shifting into reverse (R) disables the system.

Note: With electronic stability control off, E-AWD protection controls remain active and could be noticeable in slippery conditions.

Note: While stability control can be turned off in any drive mode, the acceleration response in engage mode provides the most refined longitudinal control of the vehicle.

Note: When you choose the drive mode **Unbridle** and electronic stability control is off, it reduces the level of deceleration.

Stability Control

ESC Features				
Button Functions	Mode	Stability Control Off Light	Electronic Stability Control	Traction Control System
Default at start-up	-	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Traction control off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed and held more than five seconds	ESC disabled	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	ESC fully enabled	Off	Enabled	Enabled

Stability Control

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Steering

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system uses an electric motor to provide assistance when turning the steering wheel to steer your vehicle. If your vehicle detects a steering concern when you are driving, a warning message appears and the system reduces steering assistance. If your vehicle loses electrical power, the steering system still operates and you can manually steer your vehicle. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Note: *When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.*

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.*

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

Steering

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Steering fault Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist fault Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering lock fault Service now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Use water to thoroughly clean mud, ice, or debris from the inner and outer surfaces of the bumper and parking sensors. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

You can only switch the audible tone on and off. The parking aid system remains on at all times.

Muting the Audible Tone



Shift into reverse (R) and press the button on the rear view camera display screen to switch the system's audible tone on and off.

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS

Parking Aid Indicators Shown When 360 Degree Camera Views are not Available



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color. The indicators for closer objects appear closer to the vehicle icon.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

Note: If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.

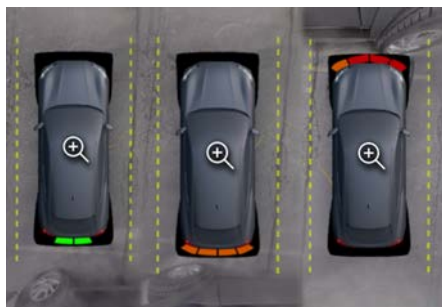
Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 178).

Note: Front park aid indicators may not be available.

Parking Aid Indicators Shown in 360 Degree Camera Views (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

Parking Aids

Note: If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.

Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked. The distance indicators appear white.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 178).

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Message	Details
Parking Sensors fault	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Inclement weather, ice, mud, or water is blocking the sensor, causing the system to become unavailable. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia are blocking the sensor. Remove add-on devices to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	This message may appear when you drive slowly at a constant distance from a stationary object. It disappears once the distance from the object changes. This may happen when driving slowly close to something like a wall.

Rear View Camera

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Rear View Camera. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Switch Rear View Camera Delay on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 9 km/h.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

360 Degree Camera

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

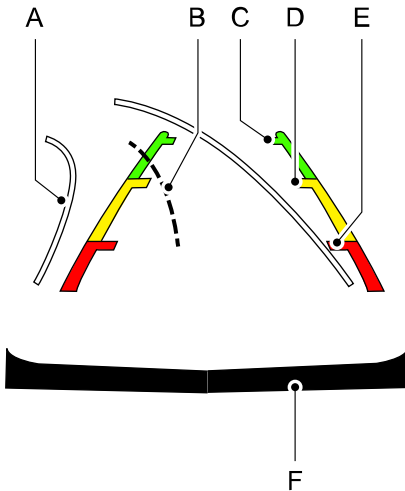
Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guidelines are only available when the selector is in reverse (R).

360 Degree Camera



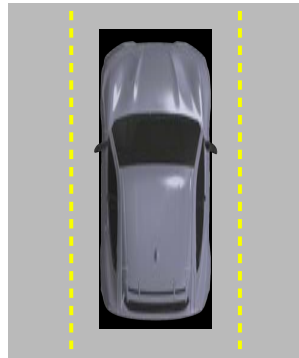
- A Active guidelines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone.
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Side Mirror Clearance Guidelines



The side mirror clearance guidelines are represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle. These lines represent a clearance zone to help protect your mirrors when you park or maneuver in tight spaces.

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



Press the camera button on the touchscreen.

Note: The front 360 camera is the default camera view. You can access the other front camera views from the screen.

360 Degree Camera

Note: The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R).

You can choose from the following camera views on the touchscreen:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button.

Note: The 360 degree camera system remains on when your vehicle is in motion at low speed. The rear camera views remain on at all speeds when in reverse (R).

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Normal + 360 view: Contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Normal view: Provides an image of what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.



Split view: Provides an extended view of what is in front of or behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the image.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a windshield not approved by us. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations



WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.



WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: The system may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor.
3. Corner radar (present on both sides).

The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror. The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

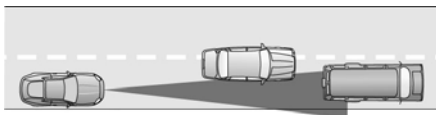
A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 194).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

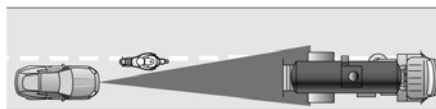
Adaptive Cruise Control

Detection Issues Can Occur:

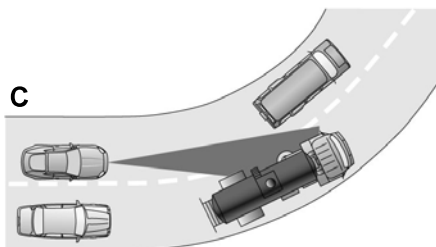
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle checked for proper coverage and operation as soon as possible.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph (20 km/h). If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 15 mph (20 km/h), adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is active or switch the vehicle off.

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.



Press the toggle button up or down to set the current speed.



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting, and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display when you initially activate adaptive cruise control.



After a few seconds, the graphic in the instrument cluster display changes to show that adaptive cruise control is active.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

SET+

Press the toggle button up or down while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

SET-

The set speed adjusts to 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The system activates from a complete stop only when it detects a lead vehicle in close proximity.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button up to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button up to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the preferred speed.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button down to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button down to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the preferred speed.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Setting The Adaptive Cruise Speed from Standby Mode



Press the button from standby mode to set the cruise control speed to the current vehicle speed.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.

Adaptive Cruise Control



Message	Details
Stopped	Cruise control does not resume automatically when this display is active.
Press Resume Button	If the lead vehicle begins to move, you are prompted to press the resume button. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Auto-Resume	Displays when on a limited access highway after following a vehicle to a complete stop. In this situation, the vehicle resumes following the lead vehicle without a button press or pressing the accelerator pedal. The system can remain in auto-resume state for approximately 30 seconds, after which it no longer automatically resumes.

Adaptive Cruise Control

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the indicator remains blue, the set speed is dimmed and the lead vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Press Normal Cruise Control.



When you select normal cruise control the cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain the set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane.

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 183).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 192).
- You have adaptive cruise control enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.

- Automatic Emergency Braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off** (page 221).
- The driver seatbelt is fastened.
- A trailer is not detected.

Note: *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.*

Note: *If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.*

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 191).

Lane Centering may not be able to center your vehicle in the lane in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.

Adaptive Cruise Control

- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When a trailer is detected, the system disables lane centering. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 191).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override lane centering by firmly steering the vehicle. If the vehicle stays within the lane, the system resumes centering the vehicle as soon as the applied steering is stopped. If the vehicle crosses the lane line, lane centering goes into standby and resumes once the vehicle is completely within a lane and the other requirements are still met.

Note: *The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 191).*

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 192).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *If a keep hands on the wheel message appears on the instrument cluster display, the system may not detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel. Slight steering wheel input may be required to cancel the message.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control

If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel.

If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

Note: *If the system detects significant inactivity, a 'Lane Centering Unavailable' message displays in the instrument cluster and lane centering is disabled until the next time you start your vehicle.*

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering cancels:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Front sensor not aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Cruise Control not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Control not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this issue. Due to the nature of sensor technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Control active Adaptive Braking off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Resume control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Cruise Control Speed too low to activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

Intelligent speed limiter uses data from the traffic sign recognition system to set a maximum speed. For example, if the traffic sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: The system does not limit your vehicle's speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to switch the system on.

The system activates with the detected speed limit or, if no speed limit is detected the current speed of your vehicle is set. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT



Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument

cluster.

Note: The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

Note: If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.



Intelligent Speed Limiter

ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Speed Limit Assist.
3. Switch Intelligent Speed Limiter on.
4. Use the slider bar to adjust the allowable tolerance for the system.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears grey.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in the instrument cluster display appears green.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster when the system is in standby or active.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning appears in the instrument cluster and a tone sounds if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle's speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than your vehicle's current speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

If the traffic sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, 20–180 km/h, a single warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Speed Limit Assist. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Switch Intelligent Speed Limiter off.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the lane of travel.

When the camera detects a drift out of the lane of travel, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the lane of travel.

The driver can select one of three modes:

- Alert (if equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 64 km/h.

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 64 km/h.
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Lane-Keeping System.
3. Press Mode.
4. Select a mode.

Note: The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed. For some markets, the system defaults to the ON setting at every Ignition cycle.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Press Lane Keeping System.
3. Press Alert Intensity.
4. Select a setting.

Note: This setting is not available in all modes.

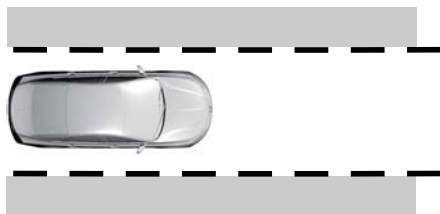
Lane Keeping System

ALERT MODE

WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



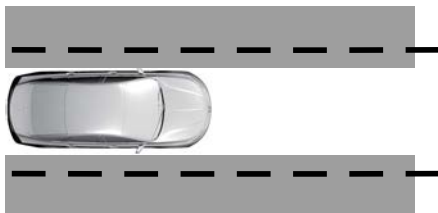
When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

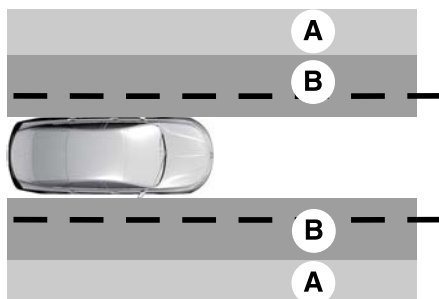
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far from the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



- A Alert.
- B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.



When you switch the system off, a telltale appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	Green	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It helps you identify adjacent vehicles in your blind spot during a lane change.

The system provides a blind spot alert and steering assistance to help you steer away from detected adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert + Aid from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a speed higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather obstructing the sensors.

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

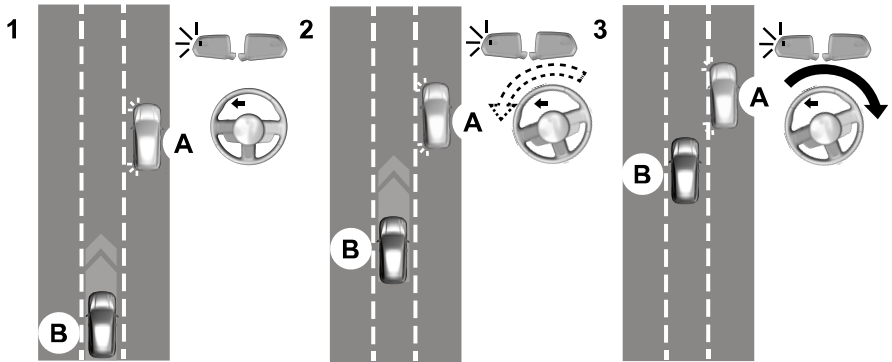


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 206).

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if something is blocking the blind spot information system sensors.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system detects a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist disables until you have the failure fixed.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Lane-Keeping System fault Service required	The system detects a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system is over-temperature due to environmental conditions. Cool the cabin by lowering the climate control temperature, parking your vehicle in the shade, or opening the windows. Clear any dirt or debris from the windshield at the front windshield camera.
Front camera low visibility Clean screen	The system detects a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to properly operate.
Front camera fault Service required	The system detects a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

- Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.

- The windshield camera was not properly calibrated after a windshield replacement.
- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?

- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- The tires or suspension has been modified from what your vehicle was designed to use.

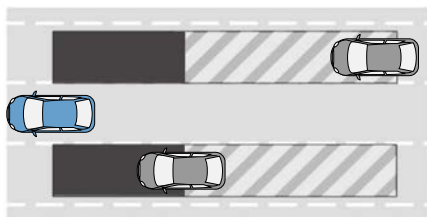
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone while overtaking.

Note: *For vehicles without the trailer coverage feature, we recommend that you switch the blind spot information system off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h.

Blind Spot Information System

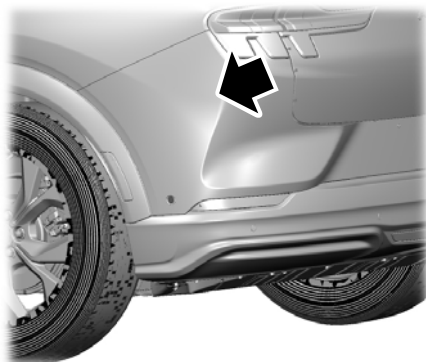
SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Blind Spot Information System. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Switch Blind Spot Information System on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice. A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when the blind spot information system is switched off in the settings menu.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 208). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



Blind Spot Information System



When the blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side from which the

vehicle is approaching. If you switch the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Blind Spot System fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot not available Sensor blocked See manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.

Exit Warning (If Equipped)

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning provides a visual and audible alert when a vehicle occupant opens a door into approaching traffic. While this system offers a reminder, vehicle occupants are responsible for opening the door and exiting the vehicle with care.

When the system detects approaching traffic the electronic door latches prevent the door adjacent to the hazard from opening. The front doors open if the front seat occupant quickly presses the door latch button two times. The rear doors open if the rear seat occupant quickly presses the door latch button three times.

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly past a fully open door. The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning operates in any gear position.



Note: The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.

WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Exit Warning (If Equipped)

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

The exit warning system becomes active when you start your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. It stays on for about three minutes after you switch your vehicle off. It immediately turns off when locking the doors. Exit warning informs you when it turns off and operates in any gear position.

Note: Do not use this feature as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by automatically closing the doors.

Note: The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.

Exit Warning Alert

Note: Exit warning provides a visual and audible alert during an exit when an occupant opens any door and a traffic object is approaching on the same side.

Exit Warning Prevention (If Equipped)

The front door handles operate the electronic latch at the beginning of the door handle travel, and then the latch functions mechanically for the remainder of its travel. Exit prevention is only available at the beginning of the handle travel where the electronic latch is active. The rear door latch electronically operates for the full range of rear inside door handle travel.

When the door latch is electronically operated, the exit warning system prevents the door latch from opening when a traffic object is approaching on the same side. In this situation the system disables the inner door handle, and the door remains closed. A visual and audible warning is also

present during a prevention. After the traffic object has passed and no additional traffic objects are approaching, the inner door handle automatically enables and the occupant can open the door to exit the vehicle.

Occupants can override the prevention function and open the door while the traffic object is still approaching and the incident is still imminent. The front doors open if the front seat occupant quickly pulls the door handle two times or pulls the door handle far enough to activate the mechanical latch. The rear doors open if the rear seat occupant quickly pulls the door handle three times.

Exit Warning and Power Child Lock (If Equipped)

Power child lock remains active and must be manually deactivated if you attempt to switch it off at the same time exit warning detects an approaching traffic object.

A visual warning occurs in this situation.



Note: You can override the exit warning with power child lock function by quickly pressing the power child lock deactivation button twice within five seconds.

Note: When the exit warning and power child lock function activates, the doors can still be opened from the outside.

Exit Warning (If Equipped)

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



If exit warning alert is active, the alert indicator in the corresponding exterior mirror flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 207).

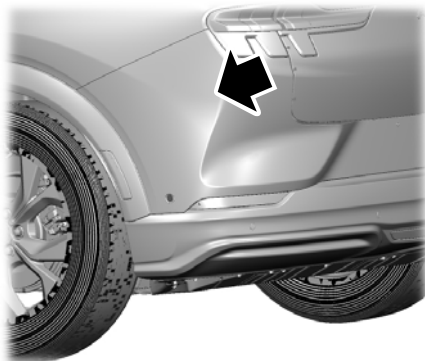
In addition to the mirror indicator, there is also a visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Exit Warning. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer or bike rack.

Exit Warning (If Equipped)

EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: Check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: Check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning turning off Exit safely	Displays when the exit warning system turns off or shuts down.
Exit Warning System fault	Displays when the exit warning system detects any system error.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

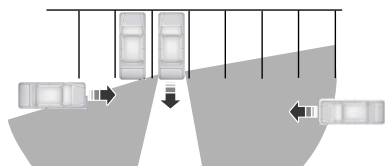
The system is designed to alert you of road users and traffic objects approaching from the rear sides and from behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

If you continue to reverse at a speed equal or higher than 2 km/h after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects approaching road users or traffic objects. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

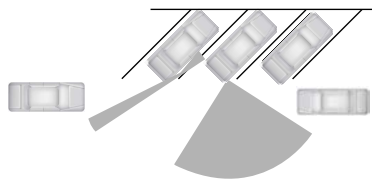
Note: *There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. You can override this by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect road users or traffic objects approaching above a minimum speed of 8 km/h. Coverage can decrease when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Note: *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cross Traffic Alert



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may cause unexpected system behavior. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, fuel containers, bumper covers or any other device may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent unexpected system behavior.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Traffic objects approach at speeds less than 8 km/h or greater than 60 km/h.

Cross Traffic Alert

- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h.
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: The system does not alert for small stationary and moving objects.

Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m.
- You set the trailer length to 1 m in the touchscreen.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer greater than 1 m. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cross Traffic Alert. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Switch Cross Traffic Alert on or off.

When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

Switching Cross Traffic Braking On and Off

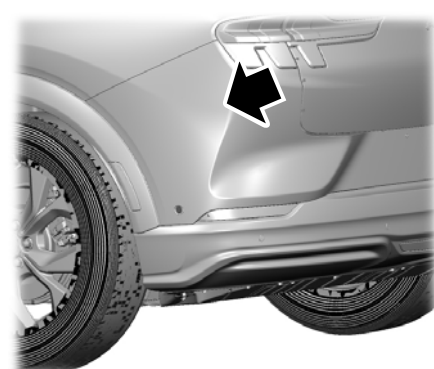
1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cross Traffic Braking. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).

2. Switch Cross Traffic Braking on and off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle does not have a cross traffic braking menu item, this functionality is included in reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist** (page 159).

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS

When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a pop-up message appears in the instrument cluster display, an alert indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the

vehicle is approaching.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross Traffic Alert Applying Brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Note: *If your vehicle has reverse brake assist See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages** (page 161).*

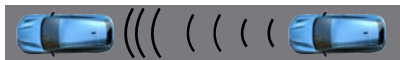
Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake support.
3. Automatic emergency braking.



Alert: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: The system helps reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system may apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

Automatic Emergency Braking:

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

Note: If the pre-collision assist alerts are too frequent or disturbing, you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity results in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.

Note: Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 218).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

Pre-Collision Assist

 **WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.

 **WARNING:** Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

 **WARNING:** Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking may activate when a collision is imminent. The system cannot prevent all crashes, but may reduce crash severity. Do not test automatic emergency braking or forward collision warning. Testing this system must only be conducted by authorized test facilities using specialized equipment. Do not use automatic emergency braking to replace normal braking for any reason. Relying on automatic emergency braking to stop your vehicle may cause an unexpected accident which could lead to serious injury or death.*

Note: *The system does not detect animals.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 220).

The system is active at 5 km/h and above.

Note: *The pre-collision assist system automatically disables if you manually disable AdvanceTrac™ or if you activate certain off-road drive modes. Look for the pre-collision assist telltale in the instrument cluster to confirm the feature's state.*

Note: *Brake support and automatic emergency braking can detect other vehicles up to the maximum speed of your vehicle.*

Pre-Collision Assist

Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or when the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

Cyclist Detection Limitations

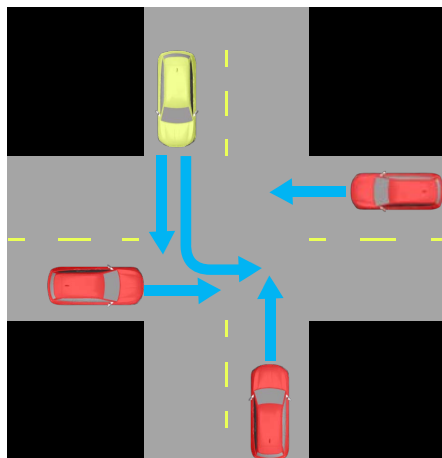
Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where cyclists are fast-moving, partly obscured, have a complex background, or where the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

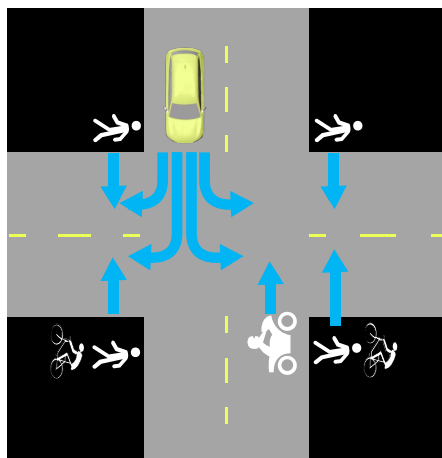
Intersection Assist

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h. Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h. The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h.

Note: In the following intersection scenarios, your vehicle appears in yellow.



The previous image shows potential intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect the red vehicles if you encounter them within the appropriate detection range at speed.



Pre-Collision Assist

The previous image shows potential motorcycle, bicycle, and pedestrian intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect these threats if you encounter them within the appropriate detection speed.

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

This feature expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h.

SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the system off.

Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

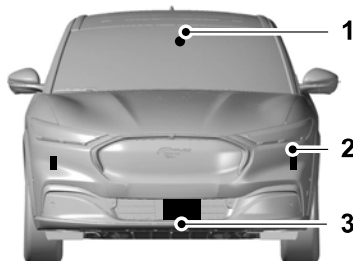
You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

- Change alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch evasive steering assist on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist automatically turn on every time you start your vehicle.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor.
3. Corner radar (present on both sides).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster display, something is obstructing the radar or front windshield camera. The radar sensor is behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 222).

Note: Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Repair any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view.

Note: If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could appear in the instrument cluster display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor successfully recalibrates.

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. From Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Press Alert Sensitivity.
3. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help to reduce impact damage or completely avoid the crash.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Press Automatic Emergency Braking.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when you switch off automatic emergency braking using the settings menu.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 217).

Pre-Collision Assist

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Press Evasive Steering Assist.

3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you start your vehicle.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



A telltale illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: If the telltale illuminates without a corresponding information message, make sure the setting for automatic emergency braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off** (page 221). No action is needed unless an information message appears. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 217).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-Collision Assist not available Sensor blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist not available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Camera Troubleshooting

What should I do if the windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed?

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

What if the windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

What should I do if the surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed?

- Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

What if the surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

Can weather or road conditions interfere with the radar signals?

- Yes, weather such as heavy rain, spray or fog as well as water, snow or ice on the surface of the road can interfere with the radar signals. In these situations, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

What if the radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact?

- Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Speed Sign Recognition

WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

Speed sign recognition detects speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display.

HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Speed sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect speed signs.

If your vehicle has speed sign recognition with navigation, stored speed sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop Signs (If applicable).
- Yield Signs (If applicable).

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.



WARNING: Not all traffic signs can be recognized by the system and displayed correctly.

Note: Use original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Speed sign recognition may not detect the correct speed due to:

- Construction zones.
- Outdated map data.

Speed Sign Recognition

- Incorrect recognition of speed limits by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty, or distorted signs.

Note: The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, it appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: Sign indicator image may vary based on your vehicle's display type.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

From the driver assistance menu, press Speed Limit Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).

You can adjust the following settings:

- Switch the speed warning on or off.
- Set the speed limit tolerance (if equipped).



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the speed limit change without any sign on the road?

- The speed limit changes due to the speed limit data stored in the map data.

Why does speed sign recognition show a wrong speed limit?

- The system shows a wrong speed limit due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the speed limits by the camera.

Driver Alert

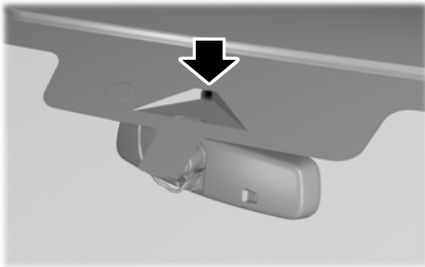
WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

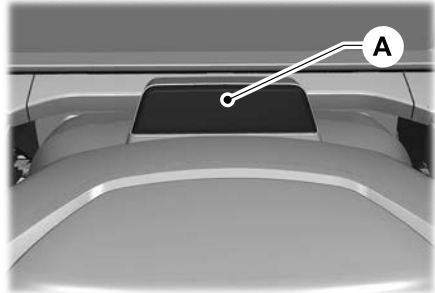
Driver alert determines your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors through use of the front camera sensor behind the interior mirror.

If the system determines you are becoming drowsy, it alerts you to rest. If you continue to exhibit drowsy driving behavior, the system delivers an additional warning to rest as soon as it is safe to do so.



If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a watch the road warning accompanied by a tone.

If you continue to not look at the road, another watch the road warning appears with an additional tone. This warning remains visible in the instrument cluster display until you press the OK button on the steering wheel.



A Driver facing camera and lighting areas behind the steering wheel.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

Driver Alert



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.

Note: *If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.*

DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert will not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than the required activation speed. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 227).

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Driver Alert. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 311).
2. Switch the feature on or off.

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS

System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued advising you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

Note: *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h.*

Resetting Driver Alert

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Turning driver alert off and on in the center display. See **Switching Driver Alert On and Off** (page 227).

Driver Alert

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver Alert Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.



WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Load carrying can also impact other systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 191). See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 183).

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example, pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

Luggage Compartment (If Equipped)

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the luggage compartment and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

Note: The frunk only operates when the vehicle is in park (P). If there is a problem with the open or close request, a tone sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument cluster.

Note: Do not hang any weight from the frunk. This could damage the frunk and its components. Remove any excessive weight from the frunk prior to use. If the frunk starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the frunk or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the frunk closes under control. If the frunk continues to close after opening, have the system checked.

Note: Do not leave the frunk open while driving. This could damage the frunk and its components.

OPENING THE FRUNK

OPENING THE FRUNK FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Note: Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).

Using the Touchscreen

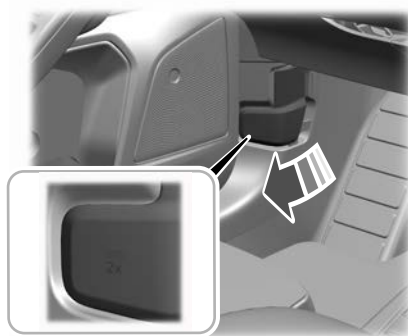
1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 309).

2.



Press the frunk icon.

Manually Opening the Frunk



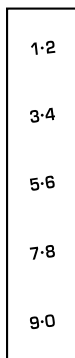
1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Pull the release lever to release the primary latch.
3. Pull the release lever a second time to release the frunk.
4. Lift the frunk. The struts support the frunk.

OPENING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Note: Be careful when opening the frunk in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the frunk.

Luggage Compartment (If Equipped)

Using the Keyless Entry Keypad



Enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press **7-8** on the keypad within five seconds.

Using Phone as a Key

Press the button to open the frunk.

Note: Make sure the authorized phone is within 1 m of the vehicle.

OPENING THE FRUNK USING THE REMOTE CONTROL (If Equipped)



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: Be careful when opening the frunk in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the frunk.

CLOSING THE FRUNK

CLOSING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Manually Closing the Frunk



WARNING: Do not allow people or pets to climb inside the luggage compartment, and do not shut the luggage compartment with a person or pet inside. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Lower the frunk and apply light pressure as it drops.

Note: Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a frunk ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the frunk open while driving.

Luggage Compartment (If Equipped)

USING THE FRUNK EMERGENCY RELEASE



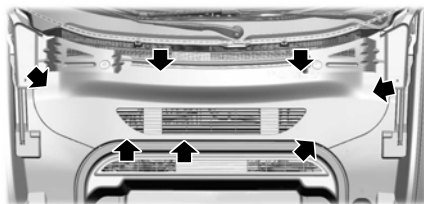
If you are stuck inside the frunk, press the interior release button to open it. The material around the switch glows after a brief exposure to ambient light.

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

Remove the front luggage compartment covers in the following order:

1. Rear cover.
2. Left-hand side cover.
3. Right-hand side cover.

Removing the Rear Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the left-hand side.
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Removing the Left-Hand Side Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the left-hand side and work toward the front of the cover.

Luggage Compartment (If Equipped)

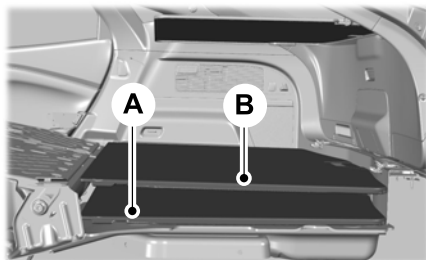
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Removing the Right-Hand Side Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the right-hand side and work toward the front of the cover.
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LOAD FLOOR



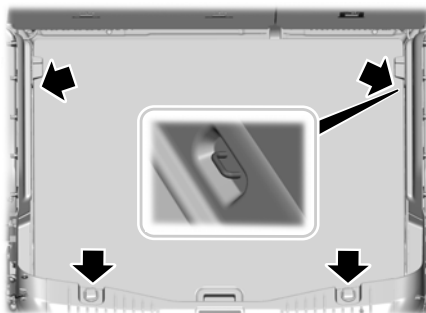
A Low load floor position.

B High load floor position.

The load floor can be adjusted to a higher position to provide a flat load area when the rear seats are folded.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



Luggage Compartment (If Equipped)

The anchor points for the rear luggage compartment are located behind the rear seats.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT – TROUBLESHOOTING

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the vehicle is on and the trunk is not completely closed.

Towing a Trailer

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

Driving Hints

PERFORMANCE VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

- Verify correct tire pressures.
- Inspect wheels and tires for wear and damage. Replace any damaged wheels or tires.
- Do not operate your vehicle at high speeds with more than two passengers or while carrying cargo.
- It is recommended to cross speed bumps or driveway inclines slowly and at a 45° angle to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.
- Do not drive through car washes with the vehicle heavily loaded with passengers or luggage.
- Use only commercial car washes without mechanical tracks or hand wash to avoid potential damage.
- Put your vehicle in stay in neutral mode when entering an automatic car wash.

DRIVING IN COLD WEATHER

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C.

Driving on Snow and Ice



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the

chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 153).

In snow and ice, all-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles but can still skid. When driving on snowy or icy roads, should you start to slide, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

On snow and ice, avoid suddenly applying power and avoid quick change of direction. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a stop.

Avoid sudden braking. An all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice. However, an all-wheel drive vehicle will not stop any faster, as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident to road conditions.

Driving Hints

DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 238).

DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN



WARNING: Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle rollover. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Note: *Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.*

DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Steadily drive through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator pedal in each gear.*

Driving Hints

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Moderately press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

Driving in Cold Weather

Make sure your vehicle is fully charged before driving in cold weather.

Precondition your vehicle prior to departure time preferably when your vehicle is plugged in.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel (if equipped) for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce the energy needed for climate control.

Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle using departure and comfort settings to warm or cool the cabin and high voltage battery before driving, ideally while the vehicle is plugged in. This helps save battery energy for driving, improves cabin comfort, and can increase your driving range. See **Charging Settings** (page 138).

Note: *Use the Ford app to precondition your vehicle. Tap the fan icon to turn climate on.*

Note: *While driving in cold conditions, lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.*

Note: *Scheduled departure times precondition the vehicle regardless of plug status. Preconditioning while the vehicle is not plugged in uses energy from the high voltage battery, rather than the charging source, which reduces overall range.*

Parking Your Vehicle

Plug your vehicle in when not in use if temperatures are just above freezing or lower. This helps maintain high voltage battery performance.

Driving Hints

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This helps moderate temperatures which affect high voltage battery performance and energy required to heat or cool the cabin.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. Use the trip application on your touchscreen to see your driving scores. See **Trip Data** (page 100).

Additional Precaution While Driving in Cold Weather

While not specific to electric vehicles, it is good to pack a small supply kit with a 12 V jump box, blanket, snow scraper, and gloves during winter.

We recommend winter tires with sufficient tread depth for traction. Clear snow and ice from the roof, hood, all windows and mirrors. Remove snow or ice from the wipers and washer nozzles. Allow time for windows to defrost and interior controls to warm up before driving.

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

If the driver side floor mat is not securely fastened, remove it, and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Do not drive with a loose floor mat.

Driving Hints

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. Never attempt to extinguish an electric vehicle fire or move a vehicle that is on fire.
4. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flashers operate with the power on or off. The battery loses charge and may have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.



The hazard flasher button is on the center console. Press the button to switch on the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear turn signals flash.

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: This procedure is only for the 12 volt under hood battery.

Note: Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is easily accessible under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.

Note: Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

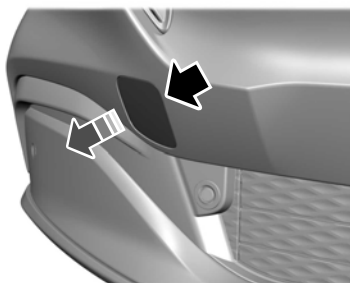
Note: Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Opening the Front Luggage Compartment With No Vehicle Power

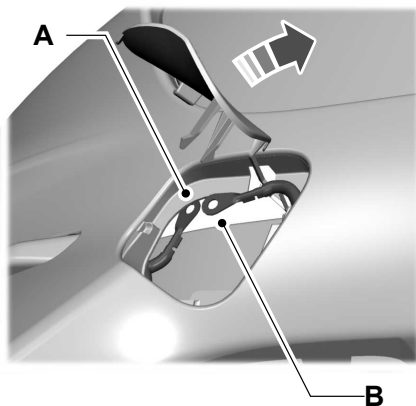
If the vehicle has no power, you will be unable to open the front luggage compartment. To open the front luggage compartment follow the steps below:

1. Use an external power supply such as a 12 volt jump box.



2. Remove the cover at the front of your vehicle below the headlight. Press firmly on the top right of the covers edge, then pull the raised section on the bottom left toward you.

Crash and Breakdown Information



3. Pull both wires out of the opening to reveal both terminals.
4. Connect the external power supply to the terminals

Note: Be sure to match the red positive cable (A) to the red positive terminal and the black negative cable (B) to the black negative terminal.

5. Turn on the external power supply.

Note: Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for external power supply use.

Note: If performed correctly, the front luggage compartment latches immediately release, and you have access to the front luggage compartment.

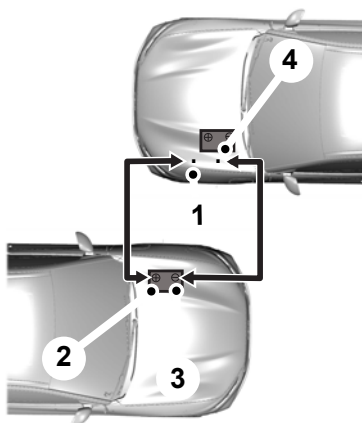
6. Disconnect the external power supply when it is no longer required.
7. To reinstall the cover, reverse the removal procedure.

To Connect the Booster Cables



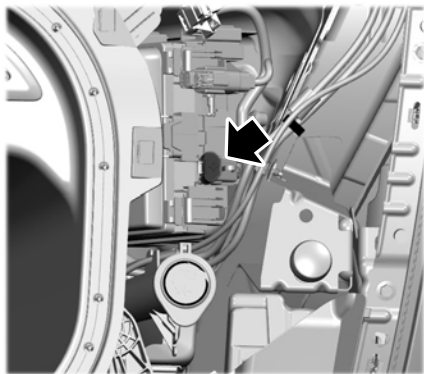
WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

To access the booster cable connection points, remove the rear and left side front luggage compartment covers. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 232).



Note: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts.

Crash and Breakdown Information



5. Unlock the driver door. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 52).

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

To Start Your Vehicle

1. Run the engine of the booster vehicle at a moderately high speed.
2. Move the transmission selector lever of the low charge vehicle to park (P).
3. Switch on the ready to drive mode. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 124).
4. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could damage the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

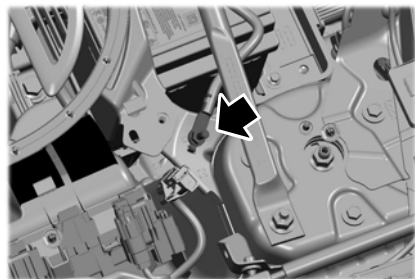
POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) jump point of the discharged battery vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) ground point of the discharged battery vehicle.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, or the unlock button on the remote control, or the panic button on the remote control or turn your vehicle off and on twice to switch the system off.

Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

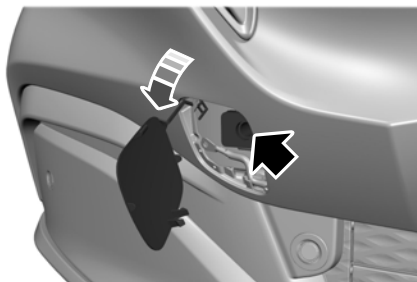
WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The system deactivates the high voltage system in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: In order to reactivate the vehicle, please contact your dealer to check your vehicle.

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



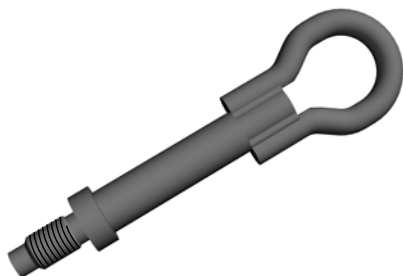
The front towing point is on the right-hand side of the front bumper. To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the top of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

Crash and Breakdown Information

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the spare wheel storage tray.

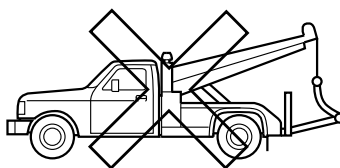
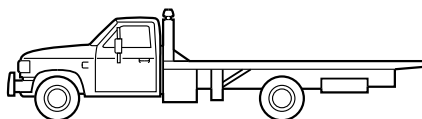
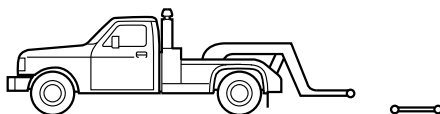
INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Insert the towing eye into the towing point and turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that you fully tighten the recovery hook.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the mechanical systems and vehicle.

Crash and Breakdown Information

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the front, place the rear wheels on a tow dolly.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the rear, place the front wheels on a tow dolly.

Note: *Do not use the battery protection rails for winching your vehicle. This can damage the battery protection rails.*

Towing Your Vehicle

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

Note: If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the drivetrain, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch Emergency Tow on.
- Maximum speed is 55 km/h.
- Maximum distance is 80 km.

Switching Emergency Tow On

1. Properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on to accessory mode. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 124).
3. Apply the parking brake.

4. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 309).
5. Press and hold Emergency Tow until a confirmation message appears on the touchscreen.
6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Release the parking brake.

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

9. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: If you press the towed vehicle's brake pedal during emergency tow, the battery may discharge during the remainder of the tow. You can perform one of the two following procedures to avoid battery discharge during the tow:

- Option 1: Connect a 12-volt external power source to the towed vehicle's battery for the duration of the tow.
- Option 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal for the duration of the tow.

Switching Emergency Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P). A message displays in the instrument cluster display and park (P) displays in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Displays to remind you to release the parking brake to emergency tow your vehicle.
Emergency Tow Disengaged	Displays when emergency tow is off.
Emergency Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Displays to remind you to switch off the vehicle to emergency tow your vehicle.
Emergency tow engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	Displays to remind you that emergency towing is active. To exit emergency towing, shift to park (P).

Note: You cannot recreationally tow your vehicle. You can only emergency tow your vehicle.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



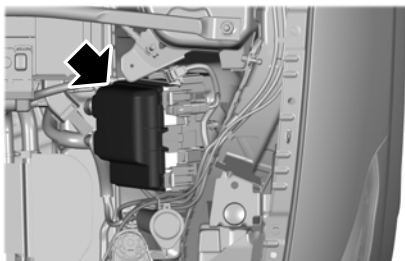
WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

The under hood fuse box is in the luggage compartment.

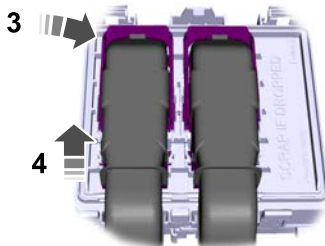


To access the fuses in the under hood fuse box:

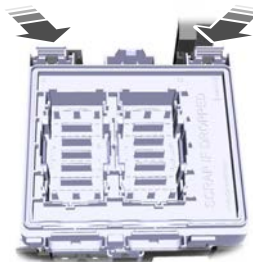
1. Remove the luggage compartment cover. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 232).



2. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



3. Pull the connector lever upward.
4. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

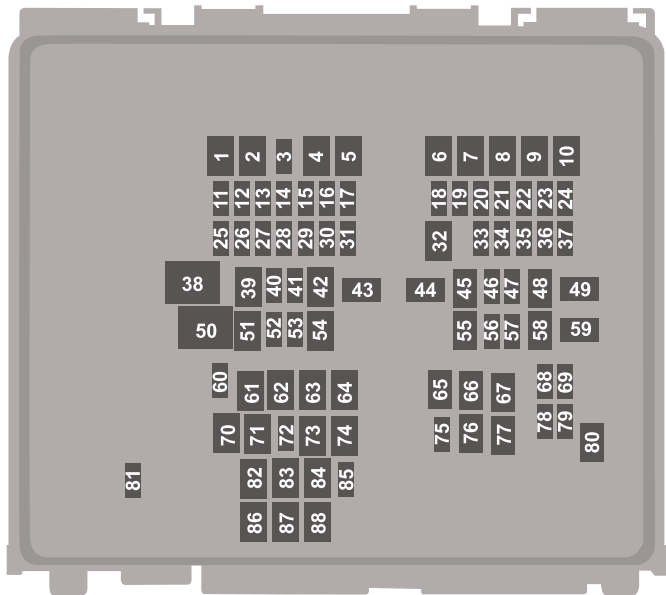


5. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.

Fuses

6. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	40 A	Windshield defrost - left.
3	15 A	Not used (spare).
4	40 A	Windshield defrost - right.
5	—	Not used.
6	25 A	Transmission oil pump.
7	—	Not used.
8	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
9	40 A	Trailer tow module (after-market).
10	—	Not used.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Heat pump.
13	15 A	Active grille shutter. A/C compressor. Auxiliary PTC heater.
14	15 A	Bulkhead connector secondary drive unit (GT).
15	5 A	Battery electronic control module.
16	10 A	Battery charge control module.
17	—	Not used.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Brake system control module.
20	5 A	Charge port status indicator.
21	5 A	Frunk actuator relay coil.
22	20 A	Not used (spare).
23	20 A	Rear driver side electronic door.
24	—	Not used.
25	25 A	Right-hand enhanced head-lamps.
26	10 A	Headlamp control module.
27	5 A	Keep alive power.
28	5 A	Frunk actuator relay coil.
29	5 A	DC/DC converter.
30	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	—	Not used.
34	—	Not used.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Primary hybrid powertrain control module. Auxiliary power distribution box. Secondary hybrid powertrain control module.
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	—	Not used.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	40 A	Anti-lock brake system valves.
44	60 A	Auxiliary power distribution box.
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	—	Not used.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	—	Not used.
52	5 A	USB charge - rear console.

Fuses

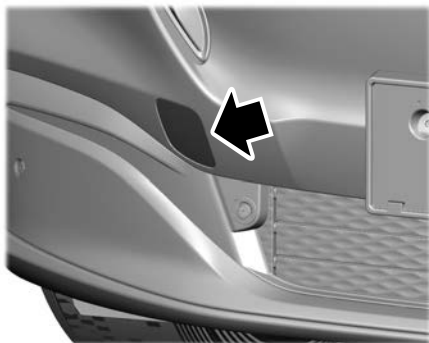
Item	Rating	Protected Component
53	10 A	Center console USB.
54	—	Not used.
55	30 A	Heated seats.
56	20 A	Frunk module.
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	—	Not used.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	—	Not used.
61	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	30 A	Power liftgate.
65	30 A	Vehicle dynamics module.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.
68	20 A	Front driver side electronic door.
69	20 A	Rear passenger side electronic door.
70	—	Not used.
71	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	—	Not used.
76	30 A	Heated rear window.
77	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
78	25 A	Left-hand enhanced headlamps.
79	20 A	Passenger side electronic door.
80	—	Not used.
81	10 A	Rear window washer pump.
82	—	Not used.
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Trailer tow lighting module (aftermarket).
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.

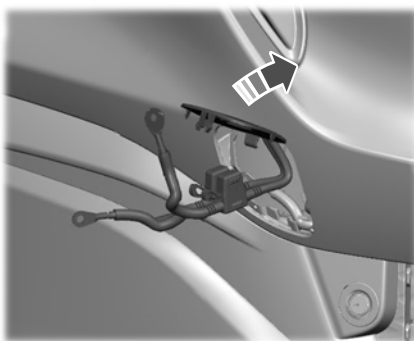
BATTERY FUSE BOX

The battery fuse box is in the front bumper.



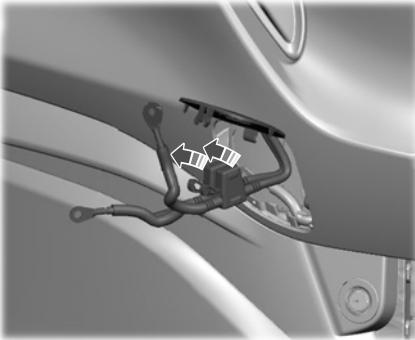
To access the fuses in the battery fuse box:

1. Press the top right-hand side of the cover, then pull the raised section on the bottom left-hand side toward you.



2. Pull both wires out of the opening to reveal the inline fuses.

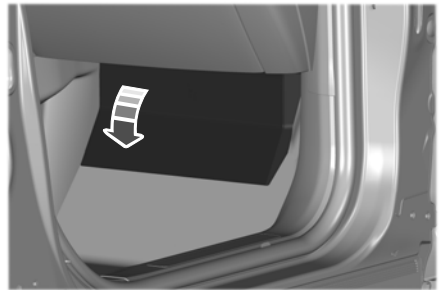
Fuses



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	20 A	Frunk.
2	20 A	Frunk.

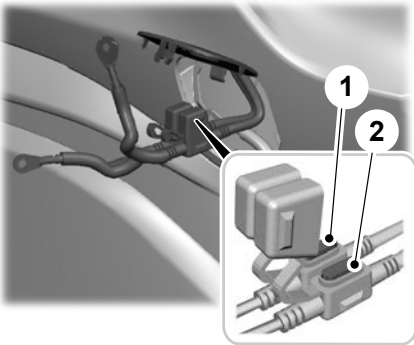
BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

The body control module fuse box is in the passenger footwell. Unclip the fuse box lid to access the fuses.



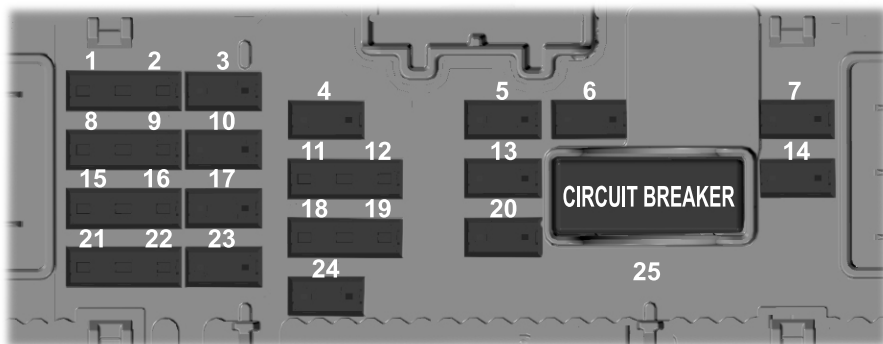
3. Remove the caps that cover the inline fuses.

Identifying the Fuses in the Battery Fuse Box



Fuses

Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box



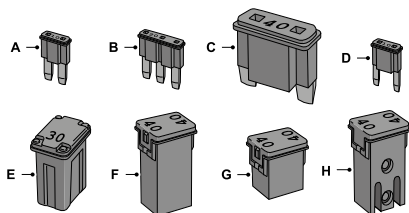
Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	Not used.
3	10 A	Not used.
4	10 A	Multi-function display.
5	20 A	Not used.
6	10 A	Not used.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Not used.
9	5 A	Auto-dimming exterior mirror. Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
10	10 A	Not used.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
12	5 A	Anti-theft alarm. Keyless keypad switch.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
		Front driver door activation switch.
13	15 A	Not used.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Not used.
16	15 A	Active suspension (GT).
17	15 A	SYNC.
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module. Driver status monitor.
19	7.5 A	Headlamp switch pack. Bluetooth low energy module (only left hand drive). Telematics control unit module. Push button start.
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Gateway module. Climate control.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Battery backup sounder (only right hand drive).
25	30 A Circuit Breaker	Not used.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

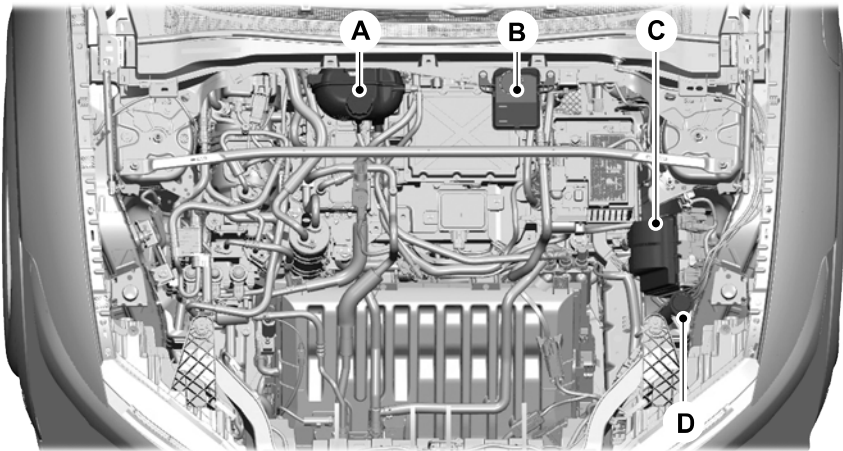
If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

See **Opening the Frunk from Inside Your Vehicle** (page 230).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW



- A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 261).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 153).
- C Under hood fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 250).
- D Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 79).

Maintenance

Note: Some of these components are underneath the luggage compartment cover and cannot be seen unless you remove the cover. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 232).

COOLANT

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the electric motor is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

Your vehicle has combined cooling loops for the battery and motor. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 260). Remove the luggage compartment cover to access the reservoir. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 232).

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34--37°C. Check the coolant concentration using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 263).

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may cause damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

Maintenance

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the electric motor cooling or heating systems.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled or deionized water. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 263). Using water that has not been deionized could contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models might not meet our specifications and could cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage could void the vehicle warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 263).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L of coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, have qualified personnel do the following as soon as possible:

1. Drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with coolant.

Water alone, without coolant, can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant, as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Maintenance

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection.
- Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage to the electric motor.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheat and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage to the electric motor.

Single Cooling Loop

Variant	Quantity
Standard Range Rear-Wheel drive.	13.1 L
Extended Range Rear-Wheel drive.	12 L
Standard Range All-Wheel drive.	14 L
Extended Range All-Wheel drive.	12.8 L
GT All-Wheel drive.	14.2 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced range.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 127).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check the charging system.	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system service soon.	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system service now.	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Maintenance

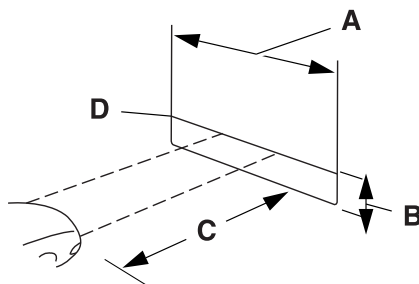
Message	Details
Battery state of charge low.	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery.	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical Power Active Some Features Turned Off See Manual.	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

Headlamp Aiming Target

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have the alignment of your headlamps checked by an authorized dealer.



- A 8 feet (2.4 meters).
- B Center height of lamp to ground (measurement B is relative to vehicle height).
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters).
- D Horizontal reference line.

Maintenance

Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground.

Note: *There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp low beam light.*

4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.



7. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a Phillips #2 screwdriver to turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.
8. Repeat Steps 3 through 7 to adjust the other headlamp.
9. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

6. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.

Note: *To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.*

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - EXCLUDING: GT

Dimension Description	Specification
Overall length including the license plate bracket.	4,728 mm
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,097 mm
Overall height.	1,623 mm
Wheelbase.	2,984 mm

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - GT

Dimension Description	Specification
Overall length including the license plate bracket.	4,743 mm
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,097 mm
Overall height.	1,609 mm
Wheelbase.	2,985 mm

Vehicle Care

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Do not use chemicals or corrosive products, as they can compromise surfaces and damage critical systems of your vehicle.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Vehicle Care

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to hot wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean hot wheel rims, wheel covers and wheel ornaments.

Note: Some car washes could damage wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.

Note: Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh acidic cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

Note: Failure to properly clean the stainless steel lug nuts may result in a white, hazy finish, pitting, or an orange/brown rust appearance. Such damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa.
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C.

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Suspension and steering components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Vehicle Care

Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

Vehicle Care

2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take the color code to an authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Make sure to read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

Body Styling Kits

BODY STYLING KIT PRECAUTIONS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%.
- Make sure the vehicle has been switched off and door closed for at least thirty minutes before disconnecting the 12 volt battery.

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.
- To minimize flat spots on the tires, inflate all four tires to the recommended cold pressures listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle. When the vehicle is taken out of storage, reset the tire pressures as necessary to the recommended levels listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle.

Storing Your Vehicle

Note: : If you store your vehicle in a location with low ambient temperatures, follow the instructions for care of summer tires. See **Using Summer Tires** (page 282).

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 4.5 m back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the 12 volt battery, clean the 12 volt battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

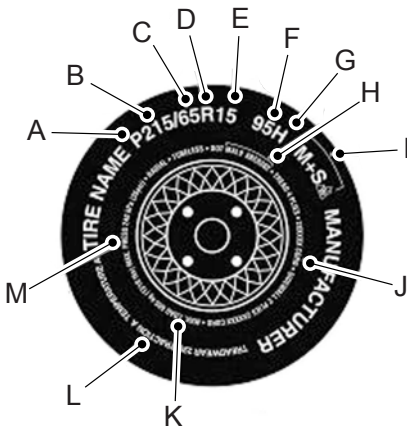
Wheel and Tire Information

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h to 300 km/h. These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Wheel and Tire Information

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h
N	140 km/h
Q	160 km/h
R	170 km/h
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
U	200 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. Tire Identification Number (TIN): A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters "DOT" and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

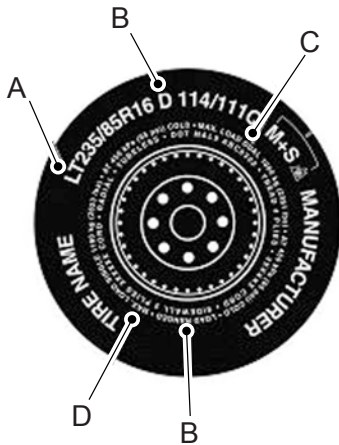
Wheel and Tire Information

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation

Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

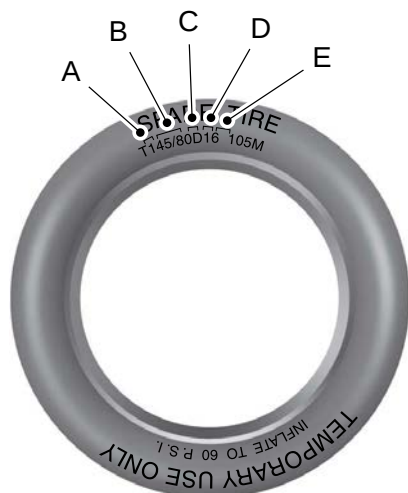
D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Wheel and Tire Information



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. T: Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. 145: Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. 80: Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. D: Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 16: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar and for Metric tires 2.5 bar. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km.

Wheel and Tire Information

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m away from the wheel and tire assembly.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Wheel and Tire Information

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age



WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear.

However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7°C or below, depending on tire wear and environmental conditions, or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7°C. The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7°C. If the tires have been subjected to -7°C or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5°C for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

USING WINTER TIRES



Wheel and Tire Information

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

When using winter tires, install them on all wheels and inflate them to the recommended tire pressures listed on the tire label. See **Locating the Tire label** (page 277).



WARNING: Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

USING SNOW CHAINS



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.

Note: *The suspension insulation and bumpers help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

Wheel and Tire Information

Note: *Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.*

Note: *Snow chains could damage aluminum wheels.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- On non-GT models, use ultra low profile snow chains or cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/60R18 or 225/55R19 all season tires.
- On GT models, use ultra low profile snow chains or cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/55R19 all season tires.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 245/45R20.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet the same restrictions. Chains or cables of this size restriction include a tensioning device.
- Purchase snow chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Install snow chains or cables in pairs on the rear tires only.
- When driving with snow chains or cables do not exceed 50 km/h or the maximum speed recommended by the chain or cable manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Install snow chains or cables securely, verifying that the snow chains or cables do not touch any wiring or brake lines.

- Drive cautiously. If you hear the snow chains or cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the snow chains or cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the snow chains or cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use snow chains or cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, contact your authorized dealer.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 285).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Checking Pressure when tires are hot:

If pressures are checked after tires have been driven for more than three minutes or more than 1 mile, (2 km) the tires become hot and the pressures will increase by approximately 4 psi (27.6 kPa). Therefore when the tire pressure is adjusted under these conditions, it should be increased to a gauge reading of 4 psi (27.6 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure.

After inflating the tires while hot, make sure to recheck tire pressure later once the tires are cold.

Tire Care

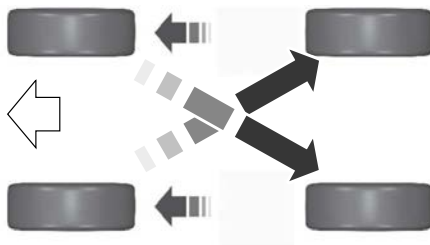
For Example Only

Gauge reading of hot tire	33 psi (230 kPa)
If recommended, cold inflation pressure is	32 psi (220 kPa)
The hot tire pressure is only 1 psi (10 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure. Therefore, add 3 psi (20 kPa) more to increase the hot pressure to 4 psi (30 kPa) over the recommended cold inflation pressure.	
New hot pressure	36 psi (250 kPa)

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.



TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.

Note: If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40°C and 70°C.

The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

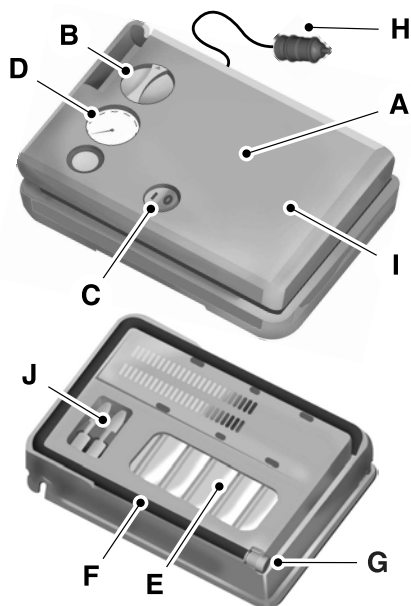
LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is located under the load floor in the rear of the vehicle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

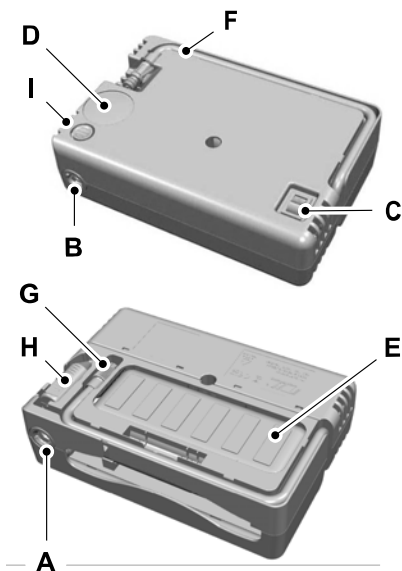
TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 1



- A Air compressor (inside)
- B Selector switch
- C On and Off button
- D Air pressure gauge
- E Sealant bottle and canister
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair
- G Tire valve connector
- H Accessory power plug
- I Casing/housing
- J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 2



- A Air compressor (inside)
- B Air Hose port (1 of 2)
- C On and Off button
- D Air pressure gauge
- E Sealant bottle and canister
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair
- G Tire valve connector
- H Accessory power plug
- I Casing/housing

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

To make sure the kit operates safely and properly, observe the following:

- Before using the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- Do not allow the compressor to run continuously for more than 15 minutes. This prevents the compressor from overheating.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40°C and 70°C.
- Do not use expired sealing compound. The use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires.

Note: Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.



The tire sealant and inflator kit can be for regular tire pressure maintenance and inflating other objects by plugging the air supply hose into the port identified by a tire pump icon as indicated by the gray portion of the instruction label.

What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the kit:

- In the first stage, the tire is reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, drive the vehicle 6 km to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with sealing compound and air



WARNING: Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

Park the vehicle in a safe, level, and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and power off the vehicle. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

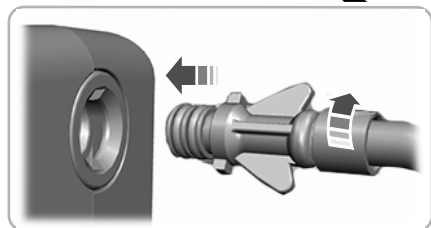
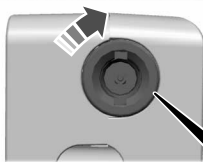
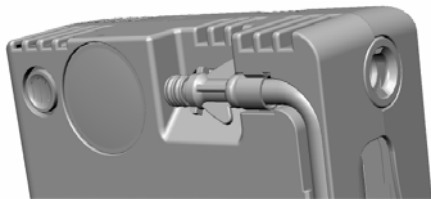
If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. The dual purpose hose (black tube) for air and sealant is pressed into a groove on the compressor housing. Remove the dual purpose hose from the compressor housing.
2. Insert the air supply hose into the port as identified by the punctured tire icon and indicated by the blue portion of the instruction label for temporary repair of a tire puncture.

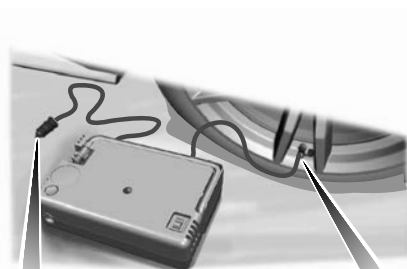
Note: Note the winged twist connector on the instruction label side of the housing.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- Follow the arrow on the blue, puncture repair portion of the label to find the port for the winged twist connector on the side of the compressor housing. It is labeled A with a printed icon of a punctured tire.

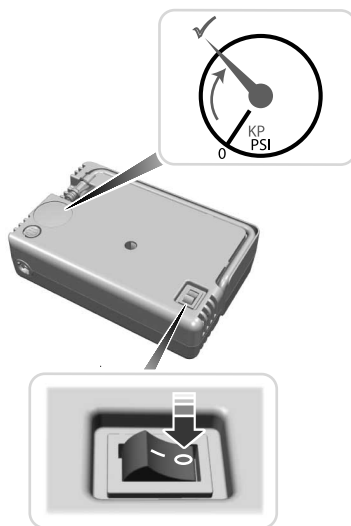
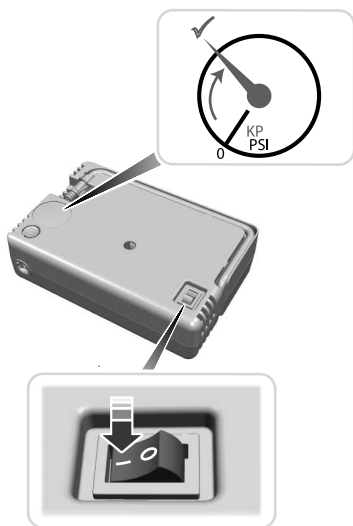


- Insert the connector and twist it clockwise until the connector wing aligns with the marking on the compressor housing and it is locked in position.
- Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.



- Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the threaded connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.
- Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



8. Turn the tire inflator kit on by pressing the on/off button.
9. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver door or the door jamb area. Check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading.
10. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Reinstall the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.
11. Remove the red warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
12. Drive the vehicle 6 km to evenly distribute the sealant inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
13. After 6 km stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance, or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call roadside assistance. Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

Second Stage: Checking the tire pressure with the inflator kit



WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



WARNING: The power plug and the inflation hose may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Attach the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

5. Remove the hoses, reinstall the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.

What to do after the tire has been sealed

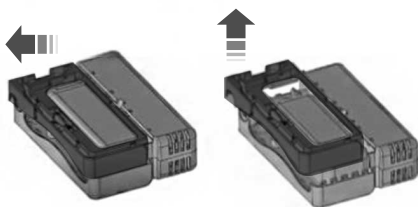
After using the kit to seal your tire, replace the sealant canister. Sealant canisters and spare parts can be obtained at an authorized dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

Removal of the sealant canister from the kit

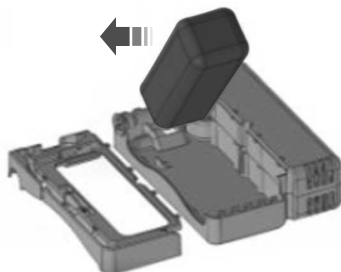


1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing and discard.
2. Unwrap the power cord.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

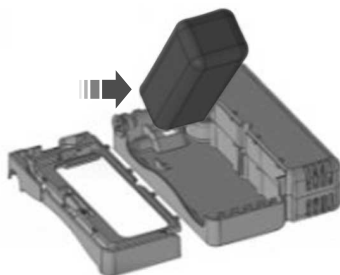


3. Unlatch the sealant bottle cover by sliding it outward, then lift and remove the cover.



4. Rotate the sealant canister up 60 degrees and slide it from the case/housing to remove.

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit



1. Hold the canister at an angle to the housing and insert the canister nozzle into the connector. Push the nozzle until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees into the housing/case.
3. Slide the back cover over the canister until it snaps back into place.
4. Wrap the new dual purpose hose (black tube) into the channel around the housing/case.
5. Stow the power cord in the side compartment of the housing and stow the accessory power cord into its storage slot on the back cover.

Note: If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, contact your authorized dealer for assistance. Make sure the sealant compound use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. Replace the sealant canister after four years of non-use.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

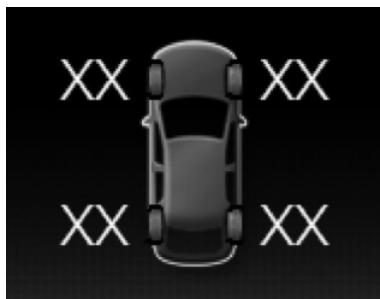
When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h for the warning indicator to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages** (page 296).
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tire pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
Tire pressure monitor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire pressure Sensor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, firmly hold the steering wheel and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle does not include a spare wheel and tire, or a vehicle jack.

Have the flat serviced by as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the tire pressure monitoring system sensor inspected for damage as soon as possible.

Note: Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may damage the tire pressure monitoring system sensor. If you must use a sealant, use the Tire Mobility Kit sealant included with your vehicle. Replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel as soon as possible after use of the sealant.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system indicator illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Jacking Positions



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

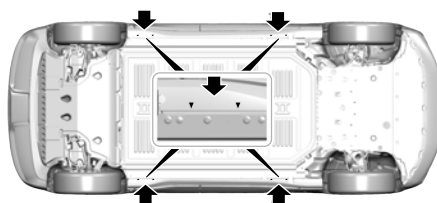
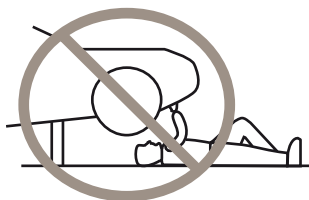


WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

Changing a Road Wheel

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.



4. Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

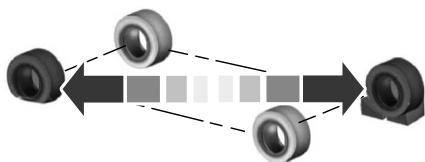
Note: Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.

Note: Do not lift the vehicle on the strike strip or beyond the strike strips. These are the lowest point beyond the vehicle sills.

WHEEL NUTS

WARNING: When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the selector lever in park (P) and power the vehicle off.



3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

Changing a Road Wheel

Bolt Size	Nm ¹
M14 x 1.5	204 Nm

¹ Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 160 km after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.



A Hub pilot bore.

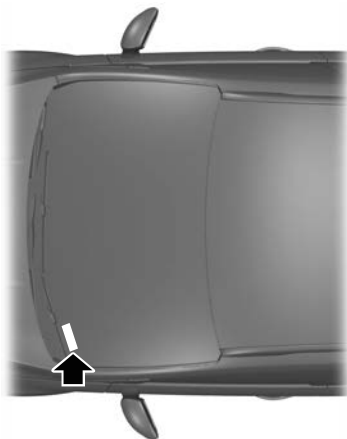
Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

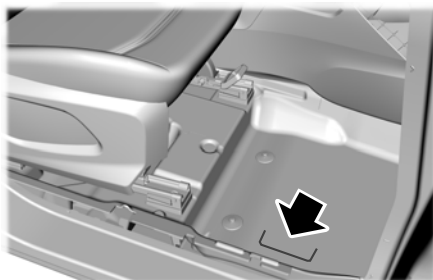
LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E163915

On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

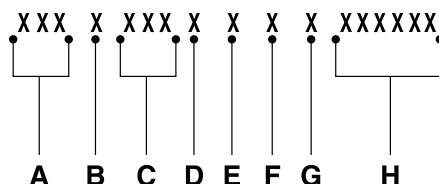


E163913

Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



- A World manufacturer identifier.
- B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
- D Engine or motor type.
- E Check digit.
- F Model year.
- G Assembly plant.
- H Production sequence number.

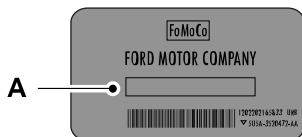
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



A Vehicle Identification Number

Note: The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.

Note: Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected services and related feature functionality requires you to create a Ford app account and link it to your connected vehicle.

Some connected services may require additional service activation. See your Ford app account. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning. For example, the modem on your vehicle only works with 3G or 4G cellular networks and stops functioning when these networks are no longer available.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING THE FORD APP TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the Ford app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your Ford account.
6. Confirm that your Ford account is connected to the modem.

Note: *Some connected vehicle services are subscription-based and may require activation through your Ford app. Go to your Ford app for more information.*

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Wi-Fi.
3. Switch Wi-Fi on.
4. Press View Available Networks.

Connected Vehicle

5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is my Ford app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- The modem or gateway may need to be reset. Reboot the touchscreen to reset the modem or gateway. See **Rebooting the Center Display** (page 311).

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Connected Vehicle

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Why is a cloud-based feature not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem or gateway may need to be reset. Reboot the touchscreen to reset the modem or gateway. See **Rebooting the Center Display** (page 311).

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Press your preferred audio source.

Note: Available audio sources are listed along the top of the radio screen.

MEDIA CONTROL BUTTONS



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Note: Not all sources can be paused.

Note: In case the source is not paused audio is muted.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

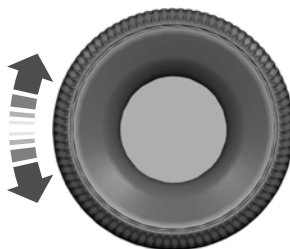
Note: Not all sources have shuffle mode.



Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

Note: Not all sources have repeat mode.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

You can also press the mute button on the map screen.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

Audio System

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station or channel.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

Note: The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

To access the sound settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Sound. See **Center Display** (page 309).

From the menu, you can adjust the following:

- Tone settings.
- Balance and fade.
- Speed compensated volume.
- Volume settings.
- Sound mode/Occupancy mode

Note: Depending on your vehicle options, not all settings are available.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Scroll to Clock.

3. Set the time.

Note: The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Scroll to Clock.
3. Switch Auto Time Update on or off.

AM/FM RADIO

AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Audio System

Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Using the Station List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO (IF

EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

WHAT IS SERVICE LINKING

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system switches to the corresponding FM radio station if one is available.

SWITCHING SERVICE LINKING ON AND OFF

1. From the apps menu, press Radio. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press DAB.
3. Press Settings.
4. Switch Service Linking on or off.

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Audio System

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

Station List Order

Allows you to order the DAB station list by name or network.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO SETTINGS

Slideshow

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays supplied pictures in place of the station logo. The pictures can be enlarged by touching them.

Electronic Program Guide

When enabled and available, the touchscreen displays what is currently playing and what plays next on the selected station.

Station Logo

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays the current FM or DAB station logo.

News Announcements

When switched on, the current playing audio source may be interrupted by news announcements. An icon on the radio screen indicates when news announcements are enabled. An icon in the status bar indicates when an announcement is active.

Regional

When switched on, the radio stays tuned to the selected FM or DAB regional station. When switched off, the radio may tune to a regional alternative of the station depending on reception.

Center Display

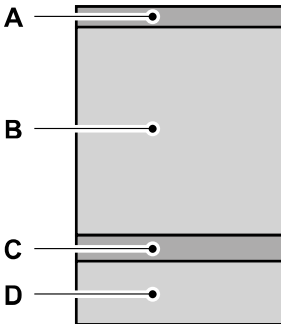
CENTER DISPLAY OVERVIEW



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h.

Note: Illustrations are provided for conceptual understanding only and may appear differently on your vehicle.



- A Status bar. See **Status Bar** (page 309).
- B Open app area.

- C App bar.
- D Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 101).

STATUS BAR

The status bar appears at the top of the display. The following buttons and icons can appear in the status bar.

Note: Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

App Launcher



Press to see a list of apps. To open an app, select the app.

Settings



Press to open the settings menu. See **Settings** (page 310).

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto



Press to open Apple CarPlay or Android Auto. See **Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off** (page 317). See **Switching Android Auto™ On and Off** (page 317).



Alexa Built-In



Press to set up Alexa.

Camera



Press to access the camera screen.

Center Display

Connected Device



Automatic crash notification system off.



Device signal strength.



Device signal roaming.



Device signal not available.

Vehicle Data and Location



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle Signal



Vehicle signal strength.



Vehicle signal roaming.



Vehicle signal not available.



Wi-Fi connected.

Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.



Traffic announcements are active.

Note: If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

Wireless Charging



Wireless charging active.



Device connected and not charging.

Personal Profiles



Press to change or add a profile. See **Personal Profiles** (page 319).

SETTINGS

-  Press to open the settings menu.
- Select an item on the side menu to access specific settings. The main area changes as you select different side menu items.
- Press the icon again to close the list of settings.

You can change the display language and other measurement units under the General menu.

Center Display



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it to expand the menu and see additional settings.



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Display Settings

From the display menu you can do the following:

- Manually adjust the screen brightness.
- Set the display mode for the instrument cluster and touchscreen.

Touchscreen Brightness

To manually adjust the screen brightness, use the plus or minus buttons.

Note: *The display brightness is limited if the settings of the instrument panel lighting brightness are set to the highest or lowest setting.*

DRIVER ASSISTANCE MENU

To access the driver assistance menu:

1.  Press to open the settings menu.

Note: *The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.*

2. Press Driver Assistance.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

Voice Interaction

FORD ASSISTANT

USING FORD ASSISTANT

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 302).

Voice Command Examples

To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Voice Command Help.
3. Select a feature.

FORD ASSISTANT SETTINGS

To access the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 309).

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advanced mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.

- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

FORD ASSISTANT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example *, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Connecting your phone stores contact and call data on your vehicle.

Note: *This data is used to provide intelligent suggestions. You can switch this off in the touchscreen settings menu. See **Selecting a Personal Profile** (page 320).*

Note: *Unpairing your phone removes the contact and call data from your vehicle and stops intelligent call suggestions.*

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 309).
3. Select Add Phone.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to pair your device.

PHONE MENU



Press to view your favorite contacts.



Press to view your recent calls.



Press to view your contacts



Press to use the phone keypad.



Press to display recent text messages.



Press to view recent emails.

Press the down arrow to view additional items for a connected device.



Press to begin a voice interaction.



Press to switch to a different connected device.



Press to mute notifications.



Press to access phone settings.

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favorites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Listen	Listen the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Phone

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

The settings on your device must be enabled to receive text message notifications on the center display. Check your device settings to enable these features.

ENABLING APPS ON A MOBILE DEVICE

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Enabling Apps on an iOS Device

1. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.*

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

Enabling Apps on an Android Device

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.

Note: *Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.*

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 309).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Apple CarPlay icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 309).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Android Auto icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 309).
2. Press Add Phone.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

1. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

2. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 309).



Press the **Bluetooth®** option.

Note: If Bluetooth device was not the previous source.

To play your selected media file, use the audio system buttons on the touchscreen. See **Media Control Buttons** (page 305).

Browsing your Media Library

When a compatible mobile device is connected to the vehicle, your media library is accessible through the touchscreen. From the touchscreen, you can browse through songs, albums, artists, and playlists on your mobile device.

Note: This feature is dependent on the connected mobile device and the media application used.

Note: Browse feature functionality may be limited while driving.

Personal Profiles

HOW DO PERSONAL PROFILES WORK

You can create multiple personal profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle settings such as seats and mirrors, as well as non-positional settings like radio, navigation and driver assist system settings. Positional settings are saved by holding a memory function button. Non-positional settings are saved when you change a setting while a profile is active.

ENABLING OR DISABLING PERSONAL PROFILES

1. From the status bar, press Personal Profiles icon. See **Status Bar** (page 309).
2. Switch Enable Profiles on or off.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

When enabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device that is not linked to a driver profile does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile but is saved to a preset setting does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

When disabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device does not recall any non-positional settings but still recalls positional settings from the driver profile which the remote control or mobile device is linked to.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is linked to a driver profile or has saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

CREATING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. From the status bar, press Personal Profiles icon. See **Status Bar** (page 309).
3. Press Add New.
4. Follow the instructions on the display.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

LINKING OR UNLINKING A PERSONAL PROFILE

You can link your profile to a remote control or mobile device so that your settings are activated when you use the remote control or mobile device to turn on the vehicle.

Personal Profiles

Remote Control

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls by assigning a remote control to a personal profile.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

Note: *You cannot link a remote control to a guest profile.*

1. From the status bar, press Personal Profiles icon. See **Status Bar** (page 309).
2. Select the profile to link or unlink.
3. Select the remote control to link or unlink.
4. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *If more than one linked remote control is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*

Mobile Device

1. From the status bar, press Personal Profiles icon. See **Status Bar** (page 309).
 2. Select the profile to link or unlink.
- Note:** *You cannot link a mobile device to a guest profile.*
3. Select the mobile device to link or unlink.
 4. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

Note: *The mobile device must be in your vehicle and previously set up as a remote control for your vehicle.*

Note: *If more than one linked mobile device is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first mobile device to initiate a memory recall.*

SELECTING A PERSONAL PROFILE

You can select a profile using the touchscreen or the preset button you selected when you created your profile.

If you use a linked device, such as a remote control or mobile device, the active profile is set to the linked profile.

To change the active profile:

1. From the status bar, press Personal Profiles icon. See **Status Bar** (page 309).
2. Select the profile to use.
3. Press Make Profile Active.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

DELETING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1. From the status bar, press Personal Profiles icon. See **Status Bar** (page 309).
2. Select the profile to delete.
3. Press Delete Profile.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

Navigation

CONNECTED NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may have connected navigation. This is a connected service and is offered for an initial trial period, after which time, the service may cease to be available or may be subject to a subscription fee. For additional information on this and other connected services, refer to the Ford app Terms and Privacy Policy available on the local Ford website.

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1.  Press the button on the touchscreen to open the application drawer.

2. Press **Navigation**.

Note: As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

For information on how to update the embedded map data on your vehicle, visit your local Ford website, or contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP



Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

LIVE TRAFFIC

WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press the tools button on the map screen.
2. Press Navigation Settings.
3. Press the Traffic button.
4. Switch Traffic on or off.

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.

Navigation

3. Press the search button.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Switching Predictive Destinations On and Off

You can switch Destination Suggestions on and off under the User Data section in the navigation settings menu.

Setting a Destination

Access the feature bar using the touchscreen and select the predicted destination at the top of the screen. You can access additional predictive destinations by pressing the search bar on the map screen and then pressing the myTrends button.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press the recents button.
3. Select a destination from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon to save a location.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press on a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Begin navigation to a destination.
2. Search for your waypoint using the search bar.
3. Press Add to add the waypoint to your trip.
4. Press Go!

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the search bar on the map screen.
2. Press myTrips.
3. Press Current Trip.
4. Use the menu to add destinations, remove destinations, or rearrange destinations.

Navigation

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the next step indicator on the top of the touchscreen during an active navigation session to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See

Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network (page 302).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 325).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

From settings menu, press Software Updates. See **Center Display** (page 309).

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we recommend switching Automatic Updates on.

Vehicle Software Updates

Note: Software updates require approval to download or install when Automatic Updates is switched off.

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Recurring Schedule.
2. Select the days and time for updates.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates when available. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.

Installing Software Updates

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Update Details.
2. Press Update Now.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu, Press Update Details.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press General.
3. Press Reset.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Customer Information

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

You can locate radio frequency certification labels and declarations of conformity for components on your vehicle at your local Ford or Lincoln website along with your owner information.

For more information scan here:



<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Customer Information

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Customer Information

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Customer Information

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND

Customer Information

UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES

Customer Information

PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer

devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE,

Customer Information

MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Customer Information

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page below for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

<https://gracenote.com>



THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

Customer Information

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracernote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency

equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelomatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

<https://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions>



1. Acceptance

Customer Information

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

<https://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions>



2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, pipes or hoses. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.

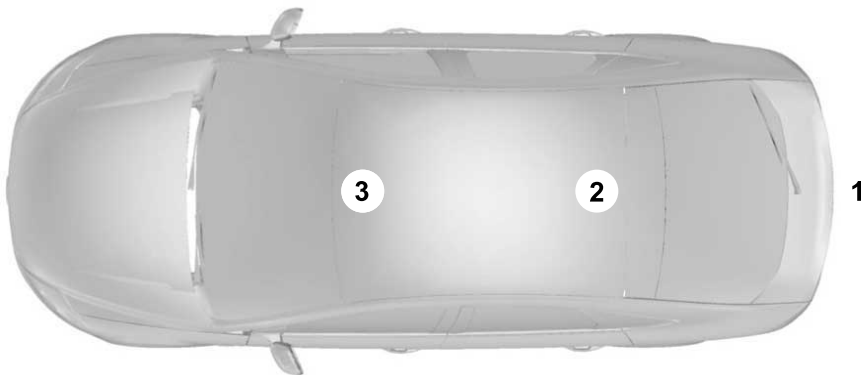


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

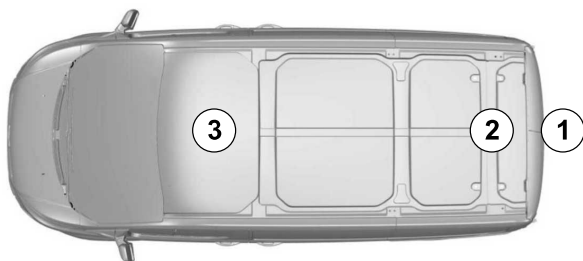
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cell phones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car

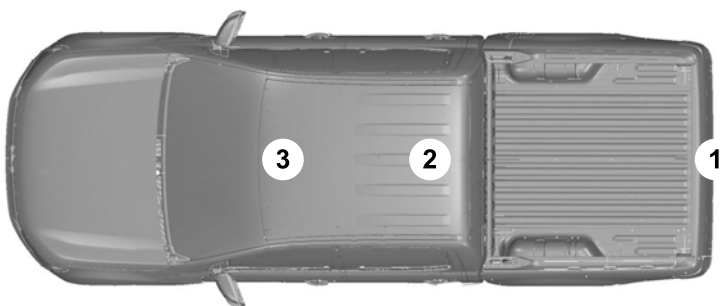


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30 ¹	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-87	50	2, 3
144-174	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

¹For battery electric vehicles and plug-in hybrid vehicles, this frequency is not approved when your vehicle is plugged-in and charging.

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

Index

1

12V Battery.....	264
Changing the 12V Battery.....	264
Charging the 12V Battery.....	264
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	264
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	264
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	264

3

360 Degree Camera.....	180
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	181
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	180
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	180
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	181
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	181
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	182

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	101
About This Publication.....	15
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	153
Accessing Navigation.....	321
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....	125
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	100
AC Charging.....	131
Charging at Home.....	131
Charging in Public.....	133
Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord.....	134
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	183
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	194
Lane Centering.....	190
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	193
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation.....	186
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	190
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	183

Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	183
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	194
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	194
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	94
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	265
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	89
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor.....	233
Adjusting the Map.....	321
Changing the Format of the Map.....	321
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	321
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	37
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	37
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	306
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance.....	197
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	73
Adjusting the Volume.....	305
Aid Mode.....	200
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	200
What Is Aid Mode.....	200
Airbag Precautions.....	42
Airbags.....	41
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	101
Air Conditioning System Refrigerant.....	104
Alert and Aid Mode.....	200
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	201
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	200
Alert Mode.....	200
How Does Alert Mode Work.....	200
What Is Alert Mode.....	200
All-Wheel Drive.....	148
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	148
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	148
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	148
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	148
All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....	148
AM/FM Radio.....	306
AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	306
Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station.....	306

Index

Ambient Lighting - Vehicles With:	
Ambient Lighting.....	89
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	153
Anti-Lock Braking System	
Limitations.....	153
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	70
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	71
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm	
System.....	71
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System	
Work.....	70
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	71
What Are the Interior Sensors.....	70
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	70
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	71
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	71
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	71
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	72
What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	71
What Is Ask on Exit.....	71
Appendices.....	344
Applying the Electric Parking	
Brake.....	156
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an	
Emergency.....	156
Approach Detection	
See: Switching Welcome Lighting On and	
Off.....	82
Audio System.....	305
AM/FM Radio.....	306
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	307
Audio System Precautions.....	305
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	95
What Is the Auto-Dimming Exterior	
Mirror.....	95
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	93
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	
Limitations.....	93
What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior	
Mirror.....	93
Auto Hold.....	164
Auto Hold Indicators.....	164
Autolamps.....	81
Autolamp Settings.....	81
What Are Autolamps.....	81
Automatically Releasing the Electric	
Parking Brake.....	156
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	245
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	245
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	221
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking	
On and Off.....	221
What Is Automatic Emergency	
Braking.....	221
Automatic High Beam Control.....	82
Automatic High Beam Control	
Indicators.....	84
Automatic High Beam Control –	
Information Messages.....	84
Automatic High Beam Control	
Limitations.....	84
Automatic High Beam Control	
Precautions.....	83
Automatic High Beam Control	
Requirements.....	83
How Does Automatic High Beam Control	
Work.....	82
Overriding Automatic High Beam	
Control.....	84
Switching Automatic High Beam Control	
On and Off.....	84
Automatic Locking Mode.....	36
Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	37
Engaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	37
What Is Automatic Locking Mode.....	36
When to Use Automatic Locking	
Mode.....	36
Auto Mode.....	103
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	103
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	103
Autounlock.....	53
Autounlock Requirements.....	53
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	53
What Is Autounlock.....	53
Autowipers.....	75
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain	
Sensor.....	76
Autowipers Settings.....	75
What Are Autowipers.....	75
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	148
B	
Battery Fuse Box.....	255

Index

Blind Spot Assist.....	202	Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	196
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	203	Charge Coupler Manual Release.....	137
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	202	Charge Port Indicators.....	130
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	202	Charging a Device.....	118
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	202	Charging a Wireless Device.....	121
Blind Spot Information System.....	206	Charging Equipment Precautions.....	130
Blind Spot Information System –		Charging Settings.....	138
Troubleshooting.....	208	Charging Your Vehicle.....	130
Blind Spot Information System		AC Charging.....	131
Indicators.....	207	Charging Your Vehicle –	
Blind Spot Information System		Troubleshooting.....	143
Limitations.....	206	Charging Your Vehicle –	
Blind Spot Information System		Troubleshooting.....	143
Precautions.....	206	Charging Your Vehicle – Information	
Blind Spot Information System		Messages.....	143
Requirements.....	206	Charging Your Vehicle – Warning	
Blind Spot Information System –		Lamps.....	143
Troubleshooting.....	208	Checking Seatbelt Fit.....	32
Blind Spot Information System –		Checking the Brake Fluid.....	153
Information Messages.....	208	Checking the Seatbelts.....	39
Bluetooth®.....	318	Checking the Tire Pressures.....	285
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	256	Checking the Wiper Blades.....	77
Body Styling Kit Precautions.....	274	Child Restraint Anchorage	
Body Styling Kits.....	274	Locations.....	30
Bonnet Lock		Child Restraints.....	28
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	260	Child Safety.....	28
Brake Coach.....	99	Child Safety Locks.....	33
Brake Fluid Specification.....	154	Cleaning the Exterior.....	270
Brake Over Accelerator.....	153	Cleaning Camera Lenses and	
Brake Precautions.....	153	Sensors.....	271
Brakes.....	153	Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless	
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	153	Steel.....	270
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	155	Cleaning Headlamps and Rear	
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	155	Lamps.....	270
Brakes – Frequently Asked		Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	271
Questions.....	155	Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	270
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	155	Cleaning the Underbody.....	271
		Cleaning Wheels.....	270
		Cleaning Windows and Wiper	
		Blades.....	270
		Cleaning the Interior.....	271
		Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	272
		Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	272
		Cleaning Fabric.....	272
		Cleaning Plastic.....	272
		Cleaning Seatbelts.....	273
		Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	273
		Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	271

C

Canceling the Set Speed.....	188
Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	197
Center Display.....	309
Center Display Overview.....	309
Changing a Flat Tire.....	297
Changing a Road Wheel.....	297
Changing the Remote Control	
Battery.....	49

Index

Cleaning Vinyl.....	272
Climate Control.....	101
Auto Mode.....	103
Climate Control – Warning Lamps.....	104
Closing the Frunk.....	231
Closing the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	231
Closing the Liftgate.....	64
Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	65
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	64
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	64
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	65
Connected Navigation.....	321
Connected Vehicle.....	302
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	303
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	302
Connected Vehicle Data.....	23
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	302
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	302
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	303
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	303
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	303
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	318
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	302
Connecting the Ford App to the Modem.....	302
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	302
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	302
Connecting Your Phone.....	314
Contacting Us.....	13
Coolant.....	261
Adding Coolant.....	261
Changing the Coolant.....	263
Checking the Coolant Level.....	261
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	263
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	241
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	245
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	242

Post-Crash Alert System.....	244
Recovery Towing.....	245
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	43
Creating a Personal Profile.....	319
Cross Traffic Alert.....	213
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	216
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	216
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	214
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	213
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	216
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	216
Cup Holders.....	123
Cup Holder Precautions.....	123
Customer Information.....	327

D

Data Privacy.....	21
DC Charging.....	135
Deleting a Personal Profile.....	320
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	307
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	307
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Settings.....	308
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	307
Switching Service Linking On and Off.....	307
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	307
What Is Service Linking.....	307
Directing the Flow of Air.....	103
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	53
Doors and Locks.....	52
Autounlock.....	53
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	53
Mislock.....	53
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	52
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	52
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	53
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions.....	55

Index

Doors and Locks – Information	
Messages.....	54
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	53
Drive Mode Control.....	149
Drive Mode Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	150
Drive Modes.....	149
Drive Mode Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	150
Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	151
Drive Mode Control – Information	
Messages.....	150
Drive Mode Control – Warning	
Lamps.....	150
Drive Modes.....	149
Active.....	149
Untame.....	149
Whisper.....	150
Driver Alert.....	226
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	228
Driver Alert Indicators.....	227
Driver Alert Limitations.....	227
Driver Alert Precautions.....	226
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	228
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	228
Driver Assistance Menu.....	311
Driving Hints.....	236
Electric Vehicle.....	238
Driving in Cold Weather.....	236
Driving In Sand.....	237
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	237
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	237
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	238
Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	226
E	
Easy Entry and Exit.....	61
Electric Motor Audible Warnings.....	146
Electric Motor.....	144
Roll-Away Protection.....	146
Selector Positions.....	144
Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Warning.....	157
Electric Parking Brake.....	156
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	157
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	157
Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	158
Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Lamps.....	157
Electric Power Steering.....	172
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	172
How Does Electric Power Steering	
Work.....	172
Electric Vehicle.....	238
Maximizing Your Driving Range.....	238
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	344
Emergency Call System Data.....	24
Emergency Towing.....	248
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device.....	317
Enabling or Disabling Personal	
Profiles.....	319
End User License Agreement.....	329
Environment.....	25
Evasive Steering Assist.....	221
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	222
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and	
Off.....	222
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	221
Event Data.....	22
Exit Warning.....	209
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	212
Exit Warning Indicators.....	211
Exit Warning Limitations.....	210
Exit Warning Precautions.....	209
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	212
Exit Warning – Information Messages.....	212
Export Unique Options.....	343
Exterior Bulbs.....	266
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	266
Exterior Lamps.....	81
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	82
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On	
and Off.....	81
Switching Welcome Lighting On and	
Off.....	82
Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	82
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	81
Exterior Lighting Control.....	80

Index

Exterior Lighting.....	80
Autolamps.....	81
Automatic High Beam Control.....	82
Exterior Lamps.....	81
Glare Free Lighting.....	85
Headlamps.....	80
Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	87
Exterior Mirrors.....	94
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	95
Exterior Overview.....	27

F

Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	35
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	297
Floor Mats.....	239
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	94
Ford Assistant.....	312
Ford Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions.....	312
Ford Assistant Settings.....	312
Using Ford Assistant.....	312
Forward Collision Warning.....	221
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	221
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	221
Front Parking Aid.....	175
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	176
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	176
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	176
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	175
Front Seat Precautions.....	106
Front Seats.....	106
Heated Seats.....	109
Power Seats.....	107
Fuse Precautions.....	250
Fuses.....	250
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	259
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	259
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	259

G

Glare Free Lighting.....	85
Glare Free Lighting Indicators.....	86
Glare Free Lighting – Information Messages.....	87
Glare Free Lighting Limitations.....	86
Glare Free Lighting Precautions.....	85
Glare Free Lighting Requirements.....	85
How Does Glare Free Lighting Work.....	85
Overriding Glare Free Lighting.....	86
Switching Glare Free Lighting On and Off.....	86
Glasses Holder.....	123
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	123
Global Opening and Closing.....	90
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	91
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	91
Using Global Closing.....	91
Using Global Opening.....	91
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	90
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	280
Glove Compartment.....	123
Opening the Glove Compartment.....	123

H

Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	265
Headlamps.....	80
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	80
Headlamp Indicators.....	80
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	80
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	80
Heated Seats.....	109
Heated Seat Precautions.....	109
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	109
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	101
High Voltage Battery Gauge.....	98
High Voltage Battery.....	127
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	128
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	127

Index

High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	128
High Voltage Battery – Information Messages.....	129
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps.....	128
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions.....	241
Hill Start Assist.....	163
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	163
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	163
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	163
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	163
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	260
Horn.....	73
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	183
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	148
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	164
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	206
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	213
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	226
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work.....	61
How Does Exit Warning Work.....	209
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	163
How Does Pedestrian Protection Work.....	45
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	217
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	159
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work.....	224
How Does Stability Control Work.....	168
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	180
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	196
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	198
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	113
How Does Traction Control Work.....	166
How Do Personal Profiles Work.....	319
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	41
How Do the Knee Airbags Work.....	42
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	41
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	42
I	
Icon Glossary	
See: Symbols Glossary.....	18
Icons	
See: Symbols Glossary.....	18
Identifying Fuse Types.....	259
Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	101
Inflating the Tires.....	285
Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	277
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover.....	232
Installing Child Restraints.....	29
Instrument Cluster Display.....	99
Instrument Cluster.....	96
Instrument Cluster Overview.....	96
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	197
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	197
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	196
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	196
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	197
Interior Air Quality.....	105
Interior Bulbs.....	267
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	267
Interior Lamp Function.....	88
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	88
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	88
Interior Lighting.....	88
Interior Lamp Function.....	88
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	89
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	89
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	89
Interior Mirror.....	93
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	93
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	93
Interior Overview.....	26

Index

Introduction.....	15
-------------------	----

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	242
Jump Starting Precautions.....	242
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	244
Preparing the Vehicle.....	242

K

Keyless Entry.....	56
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	57
Keyless Entry Keypad.....	58
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	60
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations.....	58
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code.....	58
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes.....	59
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	60
Keyless Entry Keypad – Frequently Asked Questions.....	60
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	56
Keyless Entry Settings.....	56
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	57
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	57
Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings.....	51
Keys and Remote Controls.....	48
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	51

L

Lane Centering.....	190
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	190
Lane Centering Alerts.....	192
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	192
Lane Centering Indicators.....	193

Lane Centering Limitations.....	191
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	193
Lane Centering Precautions.....	191
Lane Centering Requirements.....	191
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	192
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	193
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	193
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	201
Lane Keeping System.....	198
Aid Mode.....	200
Alert and Aid Mode.....	200
Alert Mode.....	200
Blind Spot Assist.....	202
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	204
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	199
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	198
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	199
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	204
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	205
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	204
Liftgate.....	62
Closing the Liftgate.....	64
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	66
Opening the Liftgate.....	62
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	66
Liftgate Precautions.....	68
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	66
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....	67
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	66
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	66
Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile.....	319
Live Traffic.....	321
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	321
What Is Live Traffic.....	321
Load Carrying.....	229
Load Carrying Precautions.....	229
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	180
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	207
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	153
Locating the Charge Port.....	130

Index

Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	215
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....	211
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	58
Locating the Memory Function Buttons.....	116
Locating the Power Outlets.....	120
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....	220
Locating the Tire label.....	277
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	287
Locating the USB Ports.....	117
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	121
Locating Your Vehicle.....	48
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	92
Locking the Steering Wheel.....	73
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	233
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	233
Luggage Compartment.....	230
Closing the Frunk.....	231
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	233
Luggage Compartment – Troubleshooting.....	234
Opening the Frunk.....	230
Luggage Compartment Precautions.....	230
Luggage Compartment – Troubleshooting.....	234
Luggage Compartment – Warning Lamps.....	234
M	
Maintenance.....	260
12V Battery.....	264
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	264
Coolant.....	261
Exterior Bulbs.....	266
Interior Bulbs.....	267
Maintenance Precautions.....	260
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	315
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	156
Manual Seats.....	110
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	110
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	111
Head Restraint Components.....	110
Installing the Head Restraint.....	111
Removing the Head Restraint.....	111
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	111
Media Control Buttons.....	305
Memory Function.....	116
Memory Function Precautions.....	116
Mislock.....	53
Mislock Limitations.....	53
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	53
What Is Mislock.....	53
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	328
Mobile Device Data.....	24
Muting the Audio.....	306
N	
Navigation Map Updates.....	321
Navigation.....	321
Adjusting the Map.....	321
Live Traffic.....	321
Route Guidance.....	323
Setting a Destination.....	321
Waypoints.....	322
O	
One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	152
One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	152
One Pedal Drive.....	152
One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	152
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	260
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	90
Opening the Frunk.....	230
Opening the Frunk from Inside Your Vehicle.....	230
Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	230
Opening the Frunk Using the Remote Control.....	231
Opening the Liftgate.....	62
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	63
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	62

Index

Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	62
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	63
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	52
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	53
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	52
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	52
Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	52
Opening and Closing the Doors.....	52
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	52
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	324
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	324
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	160
Overriding the Set Speed.....	190
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	324
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	324
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	324
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	324
P	
Parking Aid Indicators.....	177
Parking Aid Precautions.....	174
Parking Aids.....	174
Front Parking Aid.....	175
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	178
Rear Parking Aid.....	175
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	178
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	178
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	70
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	70
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	70
Pedestrian Alert System.....	47
Pedestrian Protection Indicators.....	46
Pedestrian Protection.....	45
Pedestrian Protection Precautions.....	45
Performance Vehicle Precautions.....	236
Performing a System Reset.....	326
Personal Profiles.....	319
Phone Menu.....	314
Phone.....	314
Phone Precautions.....	314
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	318
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	117
Post-Collision Braking.....	245
Post-Crash Alert System.....	244
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	244
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	245
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	244
Power Gauge.....	97
Powering Off.....	124
Power Outlet.....	120
Power Outlet Precautions.....	120
Power Seats.....	107
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	107
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	108
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	108
Head Restraint Components.....	107
Installing the Head Restraint.....	108
Removing the Head Restraint.....	108
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	324
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	324
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	218
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	217
Pre-Collision Assist.....	217
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	221
Evasive Steering Assist.....	221
Forward Collision Warning.....	221
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	222
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	222
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	223
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	222
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	222
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	275

Index

Preserving Your High Voltage	
Battery.....	127
Programming the Remote Control.....	51
Protecting Larger Children.....	32
Protecting the Environment.....	25
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	297

R

Radio Frequency Certification	
Labels.....	327
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible	
Warnings.....	115
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Indicators.....	114
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Limitations.....	113
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Precautions.....	113
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	113
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Settings.....	114
Rear Parking Aid.....	175
Locating the Rear Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	175
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	175
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	175
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	175
Rear Seats.....	110
Manual Seats.....	110
Rear View Camera.....	179
Rear View Camera Settings.....	179
Rear View Camera Settings.....	179
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and	
Off.....	179
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and	
Out.....	179
Rebooting the Center Display.....	311
Recalling a Preset Position.....	116
Recovery Towing.....	245
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	245
Installing the Towing Eye.....	246
Locating the Towing Eye.....	246
Recycling and Disposing of the High	
Voltage Battery.....	128
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if	
the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of	
Charge.....	157
Remote Control Limitations.....	48
Removing Your Vehicle From	
Storage.....	276
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	273
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	327
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	50
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	105
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	77
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	77
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	100
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring	
System.....	294
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering	
Off.....	124
Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	197
Resuming the Set Speed.....	188
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	160
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	159
Reverse Brake Assist.....	159
Reverse Brake Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	161
Reverse Brake Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	161
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	162
Reverse Brake Assist – Information	
Messages.....	161
Reverse Wipe.....	76
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	76
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	76
Roll-Away Protection.....	146
How Does Roll-Away Protection	
Work.....	146
Roll-Away Protection Limitations.....	146
Switching the Roll-Away Protection On and	
Off.....	147
Rollover Warning.....	327
Route Guidance.....	323
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt	
Volume.....	323
Canceling Route Guidance.....	323
Repeating an Instruction.....	323

Index

S

Saving a Preset Position.....	116
Seatbelt Precautions.....	34
Seatbelt Reminder.....	38
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	39
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	38
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	38
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	39
Seatbelts.....	34
Automatic Locking Mode.....	36
Seatbelt Reminder.....	38
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	36
SecuriCode	
See: Keyless Entry Keypad.....	58
Security.....	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	71
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	70
Security – Troubleshooting.....	72
Security – Troubleshooting.....	72
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	72
Security – Information Messages.....	72
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	29
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	149
Selecting a Personal Profile.....	320
Selecting the Audio Source.....	305
Selector Positions.....	144
Drive (D).....	145
Electric Motor Precautions.....	144
Neutral (N).....	145
Park (P).....	144
Reverse (R).....	145
Selector Position Indicators.....	145
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	144
Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	316
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	36
How Does Sensitive Locking Mode Work.....	36
What is Sensitive Locking Mode.....	36
Service Data.....	22
Setting a Destination.....	321
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	322
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	322
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	322
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	322
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	322
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	321
Setting a Memory Preset.....	306
Settings Data.....	23
Settings.....	310
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	187
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed.....	186
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	103
Setting the Clock and Date.....	306
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....	63
Setting the Speed Limit.....	196
Setting the Temperature.....	103
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P).....	145
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	106
Software Update Indicators.....	325
Software Update Settings.....	324
Software Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	324
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	324
Speedometer.....	97
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators.....	225
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations.....	224
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions.....	224
Speed Sign Recognition Settings.....	225
Speed Sign Recognition.....	224
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	225
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	225
Speed Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked Questions.....	225
Stability Control Indicator.....	171
Stability Control.....	168
Starting and Powering Off Precautions.....	124

Index

Starting and Powering Off.....	124	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	102
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting.....	126	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	101
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	125	Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off.....	152
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting.....	126	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	174
Starting and Powering Off – Frequently Asked Questions.....	126	Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off.....	220
Starting the Vehicle.....	124	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	101
Status Bar.....	309	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	160
Steering.....	172	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	169
Electric Power Steering.....	172	Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	317
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	173	Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	305
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	173	Switching the Electric Heater On and Off.....	102
Steering – Information Messages.....	173	Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	88
Steering Wheel.....	73	Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	242
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	66	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	103
Storage.....	123	Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	102
Cup Holders.....	123	Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	73
Glasses Holder.....	123	Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	102
Glove Compartment.....	123	Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....	196
Storing Your Vehicle.....	275	Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	199
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	185	Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	199
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	101	Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	88
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	88	Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	76
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off.....	317	Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	166
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	317	Symbols Glossary.....	18
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	164	Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....	18
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	207		
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	101		
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	215		
Switching Defrost On and Off.....	101		
Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	227		
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off.....	61		
Switching Exit Warning On and Off.....	211		
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	190		
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	197		

Index

System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	324
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	324

T

Third Party Software Copyright	
Acknowledgment.....	327
Tire Care.....	285
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Limitations.....	294
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Precautions.....	294
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	294
Tire Pressure Monitoring System –	
Troubleshooting.....	295
Tire Pressure Monitoring System –	
Troubleshooting.....	295
Tire Pressure Monitoring System –	
Information Messages.....	296
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning	
Lamps.....	295
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	281
Tire Rotation.....	286
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
Components.....	288
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
Precautions.....	287
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	287
Towing a Trailer.....	235
Towing Your Vehicle.....	248
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	249
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	249
Towing Your Vehicle – Information	
Messages.....	249
Traction Control.....	166
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	166
Traction Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	166
Traction Control – Information	
Messages.....	167
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	166
Transporting the Vehicle.....	246
Trip Computer.....	100

Trip Data.....	100
----------------	-----

U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	250
Under Hood Overview.....	260
USB Ports.....	117
Using Auto Hold.....	164
Using Keyless Entry.....	56
Using Snow Chains.....	283
Using Summer Tires.....	282
Using the Frunk Emergency	
Release.....	232
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	59
Using the Remote Control.....	48
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator	
Kit.....	289
Using the Valet Mode.....	51
Using This Publication.....	17
Using Winter Tires.....	282
Using Your Vehicle App and	
Charging.....	142

V

Vehicle Care.....	270
Cleaning the Exterior.....	270
Cleaning the Interior.....	271
General Information.....	270
Vehicle Dimensions - Excluding:	
GT.....	268
Vehicle Dimensions - GT.....	269
Vehicle Identification Number.....	300
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Number.....	300
Vehicle Identification Number	
Overview.....	300
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	300
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Plate.....	300
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	301
Vehicle Identification.....	300
Vehicle Identification Number.....	300
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	300
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	125
How Does the Vehicle Power Down Timer	
Work.....	125

Index

Overriding the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	125
Switching the Vehicle Power Down Timer On and Off.....	125
What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	125
Vehicle Range Display.....	97
Vehicle Software Updates.....	324
Vehicle Specifications.....	268
Vehicle System Reset.....	326
Ventilation See: Climate Control.....	101
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	294
Visual Search.....	26
Voice Interaction.....	312
Ford Assistant.....	312
W	
Washers.....	78
Adding Washer Fluid.....	79
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	78
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	78
Using the Windshield Washer.....	78
Washer Fluid Specification.....	79
Washer Precautions.....	78
Washers See: Wipers and Washers.....	75
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	273
Waypoints.....	322
Adding a Waypoint.....	322
Editing Waypoints.....	322
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	302
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	206
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	213
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	149
What Is Driver Alert.....	226
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	163
What Is Keyless Entry.....	56
What Is One Pedal Drive.....	152
What Is Pedestrian Protection.....	45
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	217
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	224
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	105
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	156
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	127
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	196
What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	58
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	198
What Is the Memory Function.....	116
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	47
What Is the Power Outlet.....	120
What Is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	113
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	294
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	287
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	121
What Is Traction Control.....	166
Wheel and Tire Information.....	277
Wheel Nuts.....	298
Wi Fi See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	302
Window Bounce-Back.....	91
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	91
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	91
Windows.....	90
Global Opening and Closing.....	90
Window Bounce-Back.....	91
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	79
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	79
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	79
Wipers and Washers.....	75
Autowipers.....	75
Reverse Wipe.....	76
Washers.....	78
Wipers.....	75
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	79
Wipers.....	75
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	75
Wiper Precautions.....	75
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	121
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	121

